

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of:) Examiner: Fredman, Jeffrey Norman
David BOTSTEIN, et al.) Art Unit: 1637
Application Serial No. 10/015,390) Confirmation No: 9959
Filed: December 12, 2001) Attorney's Docket No. 39780-2830 P1C53
For: **SECRETED AND**) Customer No. 35489
TRANSMEMBRANE)
POLYPEPTIDES AND NUCLEIC)
ACIDS ENCODING THE SAME)

EXPRESS MAIL LABEL NO. : EL 976 545 020 US
DATE MAILED: JULY 1, 2005

ON APPEAL TO THE BOARD OF PATENT APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

APPELLANTS' BRIEF

MAIL STOP APPEAL BRIEF - PATENTS

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Dear Sir:

On November 8, 2004, the Examiner made a final rejection to pending Claims 33, 38-40 and 44-47. A Notice of Appeal was filed on March 2, 2005.

Appellants hereby appeal to the Board of Patent Appeals and Interferences from the last decision of the Examiner. A request for a 2 month extension of time is filed concurrently herewith.

The following constitutes Appellants' Brief on Appeal.

07/06/2005 HTECKLU1 00000055 081641 10015390
01 FC:1402 500.00 DA

07/06/2005 HTECKLU1 00000055 081641 10015390
02 FC:1252 450.00 DA

-1-

Appeal Brief
(Dated: Application Serial No. 10/015,390
Attorney's Docket No. 39780-2830 P1C53)

1. REAL PARTY IN INTEREST

The real party in interest is Genentech, Inc., South San Francisco, California, by an assignment of the patent application U.S. Serial No. 09/946,374 recorded January 8, 2002, at Reel 012288 and Frame 0504.

2. RELATED APPEALS AND INTERFERENCES

There are no related appeals or interferences known to Appellants, Appellants' legal representative, or Appellants' assignee that will directly affect or be directly affected by or have a bearing on the Board's decision in the present appeal.

3. STATUS OF CLAIMS

Claims 33, 38-40, and 44-47 are in this application.

Claims 1-32, 34-37, 41-43, and 48-54 are canceled.

Claims 33, 38-40, and 44-47 stand rejected and Appellants appeal the rejection of these claims.

A copy of the rejected claims involved in the present Appeal is provided as Appendix A.

4. STATUS OF AMENDMENTS

Claims 48-54 were canceled by amendment in the Response to Office Action filed January 7, 2005. This amendment was entered according to the Advisory Action mailed February 15, 2005.

5. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The invention claimed in the present application is related to an isolated nucleic acid comprising the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:215; the full-length coding sequence from within the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:215; or the full-length coding sequence of the cDNA deposited under ATCC accession number 203226 (Claims 33, 38, 39, and 40); a vector

comprising the nucleic acid (Claims 44 and 45); and a host cell comprising the nucleic acid (Claims 46 and 47).

The cDNA nucleic acid encoding PRO1269 is described in the specification at page 154, lines 10-14, in Figure 121 and in SEQ ID NO:215. The full-length PRO1269 polypeptide is described in the specification at, for example, page 432, lines 1-11, in Figure 122 and in SEQ ID NO:216. Page 292, lines 14-18 of the specification provides the description for Figures 121 and 122. That the PRO1269 sequence has homology to granulocyte peptide A is disclosed in the specification at page 17, lines 19-24 and at page 344, lines 11-17. Methods for isolating PRO cDNA is generally set forth in the specification at, for example page 359, lines 9-34. Methods for selection and transformation of host cells with PRO cDNA is generally set forth in the specification at, for example, page 359, line 36, to page 361, line 24. Methods for selecting a vector are generally set forth in the specification at, for example, page 361, line 26, to page 363, line 25. In particular the isolation of cDNA clones encoding PRO1269 is set forth in the specification in Example 64, at page 431, line 26, to page 432, line 13. Finally, Example 143, in the specification at page 494, line 20, to page 508, line 28, sets forth a Gene Amplification assay which shows that the PRO1269 gene is amplified in the genome of certain human lung cancers (see page 505, lines 23-30).

6. ISSUES BEFORE THE BOARD

I. Whether Claims 33, 38-40, and 44-47 are patentable under 35 USC § 102(e) over Young *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,444,790.

7. GROUPING OF CLAIMS

For the purposes of the present appeal, all claims (claims 33, 38-40, and 44-47) stand and fall together.

8. ARGUMENT

Claims 33, 38-40 and 44-47 stand rejected under 35 U.S.C. §102(e) as allegedly being anticipated by Young *et al.*, (U.S. Patent No. 6,444,790, effective priority date December 23, 1998).

Appellants have claimed priority to U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998. The present application is entitled to the priority date of September 16, 1998, which precedes, by at least three months, the earliest priority date of Young *et al.* (December 23, 1998). Accordingly, Young *et al.* is not prior art against the present application and Claims 33, 37-40 and 44-47 are patentable.

Appellants have previously submitted signed copies of a Declaration under 37 C.F.R. §1.131 by Dr. Botstein, Dr. Goddard, Dr. Godowski, Dr. Gurney, Ms. Roy, Mr. Watanabe and Dr. Wood on November 23, 2004, that establishes that Appellants had cloned, sequenced and identified homology to granulocyte peptide A for the claimed sequences before the prior art date of December 23, 1998.

In order to remove a reference as a prior art, "[i]t is sufficient if [the affidavit under Patent Office Rule 131] shows that as much of the claimed invention as is taught in the reference has been reduced to practice by the [patentee] prior to the date of the reference." *In re Stempel*, 241 F.2d 755, 757 (1957). *In re Moore*, 170 USPQ 260 (CCPA 1971), confirmed the holding in *In re Stempel*, adding that "the determination of a practical utility when one is not obvious need not have been accomplished prior to the date of a reference unless the reference also teaches how to use the compound it describes." *In re Moore*, 170 USPQ at 267 (emphasis added). Accordingly, Appellants respectfully submit that in order to overcome the 35 U.S.C. §102(e) rejection over Young *et al.*, the Declaration simply needs to provide a disclosure commensurate in scope with the disclosure in the prior art document by Young *et al.* to support the priority claim.

The cited reference by Young *et al.* discloses a polypeptide sequence designated peptidoglycan recognition protein-related proteins-chondrosarcoma (PGRP-C), which is identical to the PRO1269 polypeptide of the present application. The cited reference further discloses the encoding nucleic acid sequence for the PGRP-C and sequence homology with both human

peptidoglycan recognition protein (PGRP) and murine Tag-7, but is devoid of any experimental data demonstrating the biological activity of PGRP-C, or identifying any specific diseases associated with the expression level of this protein or its encoding gene. Thus Appellants respectfully submit that the Declaration simply needs to show possession of the polypeptide sequence, its encoding polynucleotide sequence as disclosed in Young *et al.*, and a sequence homology in order to overcome the 35 U.S.C. §102 rejection.

Accordingly, Appellants respectfully submit that the disclosures are commensurate in scope and that U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998, discloses all that the cited prior art discloses. Consequently, based on the holdings of *In re Stempel* and *In re Moore*, Appellants respectfully submit that Young *et al.* is not prior art under 102(e) since its effective priority date is after the invention by the Appellants for patent.

The Examiner has asserted that the standard set forth in *In re Stempel* and *In re Moore* does not apply because Young *et al.* allegedly teach a use for PGRP-C (SEQ ID NO:6). The Examiner's presumption of utility for SEQ ID NO:6 based upon the fact that the Young patent issued is incorrect, because the issued claims of the Young *et al.* patent are directed to SEQ ID NO:4 and not SEQ ID NO:6. The utilities of SEQ ID NO:4 in the diagnosis of specific disorders such as wound healing cannot be imputed to SEQ ID NO:6, because in contrast to SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:6 is not shown or stated to be expressed in wound healing tissues. Nor does the disclosure that nucleic acids encoding PGRP-C were found in cDNA libraries derived from human chondrosarcoma, without more, suffice to provide utility for PGRP-C, because there is no evidence from Young *et al.* that SEQ ID NO:6 is overexpressed in chondrosarcoma as compared to any control sample. The statements in the Young patent regarding differential expression of PGRP-C in diseased tissues are purely speculative. This does not suffice to enable one of ordinary skill in the art to use the disclosed PGRP-C sequence in the diagnosis of any diseases.

Finally, while Appellants' priority document is not required to provide utility for PRO1269, U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 in fact does teach a utility for the claimed PRO1269 sequence based upon homology to known granulocyte peptide A precursors.

As disclosed in the specification of U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661, the amino acid sequence of PRO1269 (SEQ ID NO:1) has about 70% amino acid sequence

identity to the bovine granulocyte peptide A precursor (page 15, lines 14-17). The specification further disclosed known utilities for members of the granulocyte peptide A family, based upon the Selsted published patent application WO 97/29765, which was incorporated by reference into the application as filed, and made of record in the Information Disclosure Statement submitted November 7, 2002. The Selsted application, published on August 21, 1997, clearly teaches specific, substantial, and credible utilities for the bovine and mouse granulocyte A peptide family members, including potent antimicrobial, antiviral, antiprotozoal, and antifungal activities. Thus the utility of granulocyte A peptides had been clearly demonstrated at the time of filing of U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661. Moreover, an application containing the identical text as the Selsted WO 97/29765 application subsequently issued as U.S. Patent No. 6,696,559, on February 24, 2004, containing claims directed to isolated nucleic acid sequences encoding the bovine and mouse granulocyte A peptide precursor sequences.

As explained in the M.P.E.P. § 2107.03, the courts "have routinely found evidence of structural similarity to a compound known to have a particular therapeutic or pharmacological utility as being supportive of an assertion of therapeutic utility for a new compound." See also *In re Jolles*, 628 F.2d 1322, 206 USPQ 885 (C.C.P.A. 1980), and *In re Brana*, 51 F.3d 1560, 1566, 34 USPQ2d 1436, 1441 (Fed. Cir. 1995). The claimed PRO1269 sequence displays significant structural similarity to the known useful granulocyte peptide A compounds, based upon both overall sequence identity and the conservation of important functional residues. Accordingly, based upon the standard set forth in *In re Jolles* and *In re Brana*, the priority application disclosed a patentable utility for PRO1269.

These arguments are discussed in further detail below.

A. U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 simply needs to disclose what is disclosed in the cited reference to support the priority claim

Appellants respectfully submit that in order to overcome the 35 U.S.C. §102(e) rejection over Young *et al.*, the Declaration by Dr. Botstein, Dr. Goddard, Dr. Godowski, Dr. Gurney, Ms. Roy, Mr. Watanabe and Dr. Wood ("Declaration") simply needs to provide a disclosure commensurate in scope with the disclosure in the prior art document by Young *et al.* to support the priority claim.

In order to remove a reference as a prior art, “[i]t is sufficient if [the affidavit under Patent Office Rule 131] shows that as much of the claimed invention as is taught in the reference has been reduced to practice by the [patentee] prior to the date of the reference.” *In re Stempel*, 241 F.2d 755, 757 (1957). In *In re Stempel*, the patent applicant (Stempel) had claims directed to both (i) a particular genus of chemical compounds (the “generic” claim) and (ii) a single species of chemical compound that was encompassed within that genus (the “species” claim). In support of a rejection under 35 U.S.C. §102, the examiner cited against the application a prior art reference that disclosed the exact chemical compound recited in the “species” claim. In response to the rejection, the patent applicant filed a declaration under 37 C.F.R. §1.131 demonstrating that he had made that specific chemical compound prior to the effective date of the cited prior art reference. The Court found the applicant’s 37 C.F.R. § 1.131 declaration effective for swearing behind the cited reference for purposes of both the “species” claim and the “genus” claim. Specifically, the Court stated in support of its decision that “all the applicant can be required to show is priority with respect to so much of the claimed invention as the reference happens to show. When he has done that he has disposed of the reference.” *Id.* at 759.

Furthermore, the Board's attention is respectfully directed to *In re Moore*, 170 USPQ 260 (CCPA 1971), where the holding in *In re Stempel* was affirmed. In *In re Moore*, the patent applicant claimed a particular chemical compound in his patent application and the examiner cited against the applicant a prior art reference under 35 U.S.C. §102 rejection which disclosed the compound but did not disclose any specific utility for the compound. The patent applicant filed a declaration under 37 C.F.R. §1.131 demonstrating that he had made the claimed compound before the effective date of the cited prior art reference, even though he had not yet established a utility for that compound. On appeal, the Court indicated that the 131 declaration filed by the patent applicant was sufficient to remove the cited reference. The Court relied on the established “Stempel Doctrine” to support its decision, stating:

An applicant need not be required to show [in a declaration under 37 C.F.R. § 1.131] any more acts with regard to the subject matter claimed that can be carried out by one of ordinary skill in the pertinent art following the description contained in the reference ... the determination of a practical utility when one is

not obvious need not have been accomplished prior to the date of a reference unless the reference also teaches how to use the compound it describes.

In re Moore, 170 USPQ at 267 (emphasis added).

Thus, *In re Moore* confirmed the holding in *In re Stempel* which states that in order to effectively remove a cited reference with a declaration under 37 C.F.R. §1.131, an applicant need only show that portion of his or her claimed invention that appears in the cited reference.

Young *et al.* discloses a protein designated peptidoglycan recognition protein-related proteins-chondrosarcoma (PGRP-C), which is identical to the PRO1269 polypeptide of the present application. The specification discloses that PGRP-C has sequence homology with both human peptidoglycan recognition protein (PGRP) and murine Tag-7 as support for the sequence possibly being useful in augmenting the immune system in areas such as immune recognition and immune system activation. (See U.S. Patent No. 6,444,790, column 1 lines 16-21; column 3, lines 38-46; column 60, lines 56-67; column 61, lines 15-53). However, the specification of the issued U.S. patent is devoid of any experimental data demonstrating the biological activity of PGRP-C, or identifying any specific diseases associated with the expression level of this protein or its encoding gene.

Accordingly, since the cited reference by Young *et al.* only discloses a polypeptide sequence, its encoding nucleic acid sequence and a sequence homology, Appellants respectfully submit that the Declaration simply needs to show possession of the polypeptide sequence, its encoding polynucleotide sequence as disclosed in Young *et al.*, and a sequence homology in order to overcome the 35 U.S.C. §102 rejection.

Appellants have respectfully submitted that U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998, provides the nucleic acid and amino acid sequences of the PRO1269 polypeptide and the homology of the polypeptide to the bovine granulocyte peptide A precursor (see U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661 on page 15, under the section titled "Full-length PRO1269").

The Declaration clearly states that U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998, discloses sequences designated as SEQ ID NO:2 and SEQ ID NO:1, which are identical to SEQ ID NO:215 and SEQ ID NO:216, respectively, of the above-identified

application. Further, the Declaration confirms that U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998, discloses that SEQ ID NO:1, corresponding to SEQ ID NO: 216 of the above-identified application, has homology to granulocyte peptide A.

Accordingly, Appellants respectfully submit that the disclosures are commensurate in scope and that U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998, discloses all that the cited prior art discloses.

Consequently, based on the holdings of *In re Stempel* and *In re Moore*, Appellants respectfully submit that Young *et al.* is not prior art under 102(e) since its effective priority date is after the invention by the Appellants for patent.

B. Young *et al.* does not teach a utility for SEQ ID NO:6

The Examiner has contended that Stempel "states in relevant part 'unless the reference also teaches how to use the compound it describes (see page [12] of the response).' This is precisely that situation. It is undisputed, and actually admitted by Applicant, that their U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 does not provide any utility for the claimed sequence." (Pages 12-13 of the Office Action mailed November 8, 2004). Furthermore, the Examiner has asserted that "Young is a reference that also teaches how to use the compound it describes.... The Young patent is literally identical to the provisional from which it depends (U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/113,809). The Young patent provides identical utilities for the claimed SEQ ID NO:4 and for the sequence at issue, SEQ ID NO:6. Since issued patents are PRESUMED useful and enabled, and no evidence overcoming that presumption has been presented, Young is presumptively enabled for SEQ ID NO:6 simply based on the fact that the patent issued." (Page 13 of the Office Action mailed November 8, 2004).

Appellants respectfully submit that the Examiner's conclusions concerning the presumption of utility and enablement for SEQ ID NO:6 in U.S. Patent No. 6,444,790 (Young *et al.*) "simply based on the fact that the patent issued" are flawed for several reasons. First of all, as the Examiner has admitted above, the issued claims of the Young *et al.* patent are directed to isolated proteins comprising various amino acid residues of SEQ ID NO:4 and not SEQ ID NO:6. Since the presumption of validity applies only to the subject matter covered by the claims of an issued patent, contrary to the Examiner's assertion, the utility for SEQ ID NO:6 cannot be

presumed based on the fact that the Young *et al.* patent issued with claims covering proteins other than SEQ ID NO:6. Secondly, even if the patent had issued with claims covering SEQ ID NO:6 (as it had not), the presumption of validity would be rebutted by the fact that the disclosure of Young *et al.* is completely devoid of any teaching of a real life utility for this molecule.

The Examiner has asserted that "Young teaches specific diagnosis of specific disorders including wound healing at column 6, lines 48-67. This is a specific and substantial utility, unlike those presented in the current application.... The specification expressly states this diagnostic ability and the differential expression of the protein during wound healing. Diagnosing problems in wound healing is clearly a credible, specific and substantial utility." (Page 13 of the Office Action mailed November 8, 2004). Appellants respectfully point out to the that the Young patent teaches three peptidoglycan recognition protein-related proteins expressed by keratinocytes, wound-healing tissues and chondrosarcoma tissue, referred to as PGRP-K (Keratinocytes), PGRP-W (Wound-healing) and PGRP-C (Chondrosarcoma), respectively. (See Abstract). The amino acid sequence of PGRP-K is shown in SEQ ID NO:2, the amino acid sequence of PGRP-W is shown in SEQ ID NO:4 and the amino acid sequence of PGRP-C is shown in SEQ ID NO:6. More specifically, the Young *et al.* patent teaches that:

the nucleic acid molecule described in FIG. 1 (SEQ ID NO:1) was discovered in a cDNA library derived from Human keratinocytes, the nucleic acid molecule described in FIG. 2 (SEQ ID NO:3) was discovered in cDNA libraries derived from Human keratinocytes and Human tissues undergoing wound-healing, and the nucleic acid molecule described in FIG. 3 (SEQ ID NO:5) was discovered in cDNA libraries derived from Human chondrosarcoma. (Column 9, lines 40-48).

Therefore, a careful reading of the Young *et al.* patent shows that comments relating to various disorders wherein a higher or lower levels of the gene expression may be detected in the wound healing tissues are specifically directed to PGRP-W, SEQ ID NO:4 and not PGRP-C, SEQ ID NO:6, because SEQ ID NO:6 is not shown or stated to be expressed in wound healing tissues.

In addition, Appellants note that the Young *et al.* patent teaches, "PGRP-W is 42% homologous to PGRP-C, and PGRP-K is 39% homologous to PGRP-C." (See column 10, lines 8-9 of U.S. Patent No. 6,444,790). Therefore, it would appear that PGRP-C has rather low

sequence identity to both PGRP-W and PGRP-K. Thus, based solely on homology, a person skilled in the art at the priority date of that application would not have reasonably concluded that PGRP-W and PGRP-C would have the same utility.

Hence, the disclosure for "diagnosing problems in wound healing" in the Young *et al.* patent does not support a diagnostic utility for the sequence at issue, SEQ ID NO:6.

Nor does the disclosure that nucleic acids encoding PGRP-C were found in cDNA libraries derived from human chondrosarcoma, without more, suffice to provide utility for PGRP-C. Appellants respectfully point out that many genes may be found in chondrosarcomas or other tumors. Those useful as markers are those which are overexpressed in the tumor as compared to control tissue. This is acknowledged in the Young patent (Column 61, lines 45-53), which states,

Thus, the invention provides a diagnostic method ...which involves assaying the expression level of the gene encoding the PGRP-K, PGRP-W and/or PGRP-C polypeptide(s) in mammalian cells or body fluid and comparing the gene expression level with a standard PGRP-K, PGRP-W and/or PGRP-C gene expression level, whereby an increase or decrease in the gene expression level over the standard is indicative of the disease.

Yet there is no evidence from Young *et al.* that SEQ ID NO:6 is overexpressed in chondrosarcoma as compared to a standard control sample; in fact, there is no indication that expression levels of SEQ ID NO:6 in any other tissues were ever examined. The mere fact that the gene encoding SEQ ID NO:6 happened to have been first isolated from cDNA libraries derived from chondrosarcoma does not in itself make SEQ ID NO:6 useful as a diagnostic marker for cancer, absent evidence that SEQ ID NO:6 is differentially expressed in chondrosarcoma as compared to control tissues.

The statements in the Young patent regarding differential expression of PGRP-C in diseased tissues are purely speculative. See, for example, Column 61, lines 16-28, which states,

Thus it is believed that certain tissues in mammals with certain diseases and infections..., diseases associated with increased or decreased cell survival, express significantly altered (e.g., *enhanced or decreased*) levels of either the PGRP-K, PGRP-W and/or PGRP-C polypeptides and mRNAs encoding the PGRP-K, PGRP-W and/or PGRP-C polypeptides when compared to a corresponding "standard" mammal.

(Emphasis added). Similarly, Column 60, lines 57-59 states, "Cells which express either the PGRP-K, PGRP-W and/or PGRP-C polypeptides are believed to have a potent cellular response to infection"

Appellants therefore maintain the position that the Young *et al.* patent is devoid of any experimental data demonstrating the biological activity of PGRP-C, or identifying any specific diseases associated with the expression level of this protein or its encoding gene. As mentioned above, while Young *et al.* discloses a protein designated PGRP-C and provides sequence homology to both human peptidoglycan recognition protein (PGRP) as well as murine Tag-7, it does not provide any specific experimental data to support the utility in diagnosing various disorders by assaying the PGRP-C gene expression levels. All of the teachings in the Young *et al.* patent regarding such utility is merely speculative and entirely dependent on the fact that the nucleic acid encoding the PGRP-C polypeptide happened to be first discovered in cDNA libraries derived from human chondrosarcoma. (See column 9, lines 45-48). Accordingly, the Young *et al.* patent is devoid of any experimental support that would show how PGRP-C can be used to diagnose any disorders or diseases. It merely suggests that PGRP-C may be useful in diagnosing certain disorders/diseases. This does not suffice to enable one of ordinary skill in the art to use the disclosed PGRP-C sequence.

C. U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 teaches a utility for PRO1269 based upon homology to known granulocyte peptide A precursors

The Examiner has asserted that "[i]t is undisputed, and actually admitted by Applicant, that their U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 does not provide any utility for the claimed sequence." (Page 13 of the Office Action mailed November 8, 2004). Appellants respectfully point out that this assertion is incorrect. Appellants have never stated that U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 does not provide any utility for the claimed PRO1269 sequence. What Appellants have actually argued, as discussed above, is that because the cited Young *et al.* reference does not provide utility for the disclosed PGRP-C sequence (SEQ ID NO:6), U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 is not required to provide utility for PRO1269, because the priority document need not show more than the cited reference does. However, while Appellants' priority document is not required to provide utility for PRO1269, it does in fact do so. The U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 discloses utility for the claimed PRO1269 sequence as a member of the granulocyte peptide A family.

As disclosed in the specification of U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661, the amino acid sequence of PRO1269 (SEQ ID NO:1) has about 70% amino acid sequence identity to the bovine granulocyte peptide A precursor (page 15, lines 14-17). The specification further disclosed known utilities for members of the granulocyte peptide A family, noting that "[p]atent publication no. WO9729765-A1, to Selsted, describes the identification of granulocyte peptide A which was isolated from bovine and mouse granulocytes. Several uses for this peptide were identified including, a therapeutic use, use as an agricultural agent, use as a preservative for food, and use as a water treatment agent" (page 2, lines 11-15). The specification asserted that these utilities also applied to the claimed PRO1269 sequence, stating that "it is presently believed that PRO1269 disclosed in the present application is a newly identified member of the granulocyte A peptide family and may possess microbial activity typical of that family of peptides" (page 15, lines 20-24).

The Selsted published patent application WO 97/29765 was made of record in the Information Disclosure Statement submitted November 7, 2002. The Selsted application,

published on August 21, 1997, clearly teaches specific, substantial, and credible utilities for granulocyte A peptide family members. For example, the Selsted application states that the purified granulocyte A peptides "have potent antimicrobial, antiviral, antiprotozoal, and antifungal activities." (Page 3, lines 4-5). The Selsted application further states that these peptides "are effective compounds for use in human and/or veterinary medicine, or as agents in agricultural, food science, or industrial applications." (Page 3, lines 6-8). In addition, antimicrobial activity of the granulocyte A peptides against representative Gram positive and Gram negative bacteria, as well as the yeast forms of two fungi, was experimentally demonstrated (see Example 5, at page 39, lines 1-27). Thus the utility of granulocyte A peptides had been clearly demonstrated at the time of filing of U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661.

Appellants respectfully note that an application containing the identical text as the Selsted WO 97/29765 application subsequently issued as U.S. Patent No. 6,696,559, on February 24, 2004. The issued Selsted patent contains claims 4 and 5, directed to isolated nucleic acid sequences encoding SEQ ID NO:3 and SEQ ID NO:5, which are the bovine and mouse granulocyte A peptide precursor sequences. Since, as stated by the Examiner, issued patents are presumed useful and enabled, and no evidence overcoming that presumption has been presented, it may be presumed from the issuance of the Selsted patent that nucleic acids encoding granulocyte A peptide precursor sequences are useful and enabled.

The Selsted WO 97/29765 application and issued U.S. Patent No. 6,696,559 are directed to bovine and mouse granulocyte A peptides and precursor sequences. One of ordinary skill in the art would have readily understood at the time of filing that the human granulocyte A peptide precursor, PRO1269, would share the same utilities as the bovine and mouse homologs. As stated in U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661, PRO1269 has about 70% amino acid sequence identity to the bovine granulocyte A peptide precursor. The sequence identity between the bovine and mouse proteins disclosed in the Selsted application is only 55% (see the enclosed sequence alignment; Exhibit A), but the Selsted application notes that "this gene family appears to be remarkably conserved" (page 6, lines 18-19), and both the bovine and mouse proteins were found to have the same function. Thus the sequence identity of 70% between the

human and bovine proteins easily meets a standard recognized in the art as indicative of conserved function. Moreover, the Selsted application identified conserved residues in the C-terminal region of the protein, which comprises the active peptide (page 8, lines 23-27). As shown in Figure 6 of Selsted, both the bovine and mouse peptides have a conserved C-terminal motif of YXXIQXWXHYR. All of these conserved residues are also found in the amino acid sequence of PRO1269, SEQ ID NO:216 (see Figure 122 of the instant application, and Figure 1 of the 60/100,661 priority application). Thus one of ordinary skill in the art would reasonably have expected the human protein to have the same activity as the bovine and mouse homologs.

As explained in the M.P.E.P. § 2107.03, the courts "have routinely found evidence of structural similarity to a compound known to have a particular therapeutic or pharmacological utility as being supportive of an assertion of therapeutic utility for a new compound." For example, in *In re Jolles*, 628 F.2d 1322, 206 USPQ 885 (C.C.P.A. 1980), the claimed compounds were found to have utility based on a finding of a close structural relationship to daunorubicin and doxorubicin, both of which were known to be useful in cancer chemotherapy. Similarly, in *In re Brana*, 51 F.3d 1560, 1566, 34 USPQ2d 1436, 1441 (Fed. Cir. 1995), in which the court declared the rejection of claims improper where the claims did "not suggest an inherently unbelievable undertaking or involve implausible scientific principles" and where "prior art . . .discloses structurally similar compounds to those claimed by applicants which have been proven. . . .to be effective."

As discussed above, the bovine and mouse members of the granulocyte peptide A family were known at the time of filing for the priority application to have utility based upon their antimicrobial activity. The claimed PRO1269 sequence displays significant structural similarity to these known useful compounds, based upon both overall sequence identity and the conservation of important functional residues. Accordingly, based upon the standard set forth in *In re Jolles* and *In re Brana*, the priority application disclosed a patentable utility for PRO1269.

U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/100,661 further discloses how to make and used claimed polynucleotide sequences encoding PRO1269. The provisional specification provides in the method used to identify and clone the PRO1269 nucleic acid sequence (Example 1, at page 47, line 31, to page 49, line 31). The specification provides other methods which

could be used to obtain the PRO1269 polynucleotide (page 22, line 1, to page 23, line 15). The specification provides methods which could be used for selecting and using a vector for the expression of PRO1269 (page 25, line 20, to page 29, line 30) and methods which could be used for selecting and transforming host cells with PRO1269 (page 23, line 16, to page 24, line 19). The specification sets forth a number of different uses for the nucleotide sequences encoding PRO1269 polypeptides at, for example, pages 31-36. Such uses include use of the PRO1269 polypeptide in pharmaceutical compositions (page 36, lines 29-33). One of ordinary skill in the art would further understand how to make and use PRO1269 based upon the disclosure of the Selsted patent application, which was expressly incorporated by reference in its entirety (page 47, lines 15-17).

Accordingly, Appellants respectfully submit that even if the cited Young *et al.* patent discloses a utility for SEQ ID NO:6 (which is expressly not conceded) the disclosures are still commensurate in scope, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/100,661, filed on September 16, 1998, discloses all that the cited prior art discloses. For this reason, Young *et al.* is not prior art against the present application and the rejection of claims 33, 38-40 and 44-47 under 35 U.S.C. §102(e) as allegedly being anticipated by Young *et al.* should be reversed.

Finally, Appellants submit that they have provided in U.S. Patent Application No. 60/100,661 a disclosure very similar to that of Young *et al.* Young *et al.* was granted a patent based on its disclosure. Appellants submit that they are unfairly being held to a different standard of patentability than that applied to the Young *et al.* patent application. It is legally wrong and inequitable to hold Appellants to a different, more stringent, standard of patentability, solely as a result of recent changes in the Patent Office's application of the requirements of patentability.

9. **CONCLUSION**

For the reasons given above, Appellants submit that claims 33, 38-40, and 44-47 are patentable over Young *et al.* under 35 USC 102(e).

Accordingly, reversal of the rejection of claims 33, 38-40, and 44-47 under 35 § U.S.C. 102(e) as being anticipated by Young *et al.* is respectfully requested.

Please charge any additional fees, including fees for additional extension of time, or credit overpayment to Deposit Account No. 08-1641 (referencing Attorney's Docket No. 39780-2830 P1C53). Please direct any calls in connection with this application to the undersigned at the number provided below.

Respectfully submitted,

Date: July 1, 2005

By: Barrie D. Greene
Barrie D. Greene (Reg. No. 46,740)

HELLER EHRMAN LLP
275 Middlefield Road
Menlo Park, California 94025-3506
Telephone: (650) 324-7000
Facsimile: (650) 324-0638

SV 2130266 v1
7/1/05 3:02 PM (39780.2830)

APPENDIX A
Claims on Appeal

33. An isolated nucleic acid comprising:
- (a) the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:215;
 - (b) the full-length coding sequence from within the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:215; or
 - (c) the full-length coding sequence of the cDNA deposited under ATCC accession number 203226.
38. The isolated nucleic acid of Claim 33 comprising the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:215.
39. The isolated nucleic acid of Claim 33 comprising the full-length coding sequence of the nucleic acid sequence of SEQ ID NO:215.
40. The isolated nucleic acid of Claim 33 comprising the full-length coding sequence of the cDNA deposited under ATCC accession number 203226.
44. A vector comprising the nucleic acid of Claim 33.
45. The vector of Claim 44, wherein said nucleic acid is operably linked to control sequences recognized by a host cell transformed with the vector.
46. A host cell comprising the vector of Claim 44.
47. The host cell of Claim 46, wherein said cell is a CHO cell, an *E. coli* or a yeast cell.

SV 2130266 v1
7/1/05 3:02 PM (39780.2830)

Sequence 1: SEQ ID NO:3 from WO 97/29765 (bovine granulocyte peptide A precursor)

Sequence 2: SEQ ID NO:5 from WO 97/29765 (mouse granulocyte peptide A precursor)

Score = 188 bits (477), Expect = 1e-46

Identities = 100/180 (55%), Positives = 120/180 (66%), Gaps = 19/180 (10%)

Query: 9 AWVLLALLGLGAAQDCGSIVSRGKWGALASKCSQRLRQPVRYVVVSHTAGSVCNTPASCQ 68
 A LLALLGL A C IV R +W AL S+CS RL PVRVYV+SHT GS CN+ SC+
Sbjct: 4 ACALLALLGL--ATSCSFIVFRSEWRALPSECSSRLGHPVRYVVISHTRGSFCNSFDSCE 61

Query: 69 RQAQNVQYYHVRERGWCDVGYNFKIGEDGKVEGRGWNTKGDHSGPTWNPIAIGISFMGN 128
 +QA+NVQ+YH E WCDV YN K DH+ P +NP++IGI+FMGN
Sbjct: 62 QQARNVQHYHKNELEWCDVAYNI-----KEDHTEPIYNPMSIGITFMGN 105

Query: 129 YMHRVFFASALRAAQSLACGAARGYLTPNYEVKGHRDVQQTLSPGDELYKIIQQWPHYR 188
 +M RV A ALRAA +LL G +RG+L NYEVKGHRDVQ LS GD+ Y++IQ W HYR
Sbjct: 106 FMDRVRKA-ALRAALNLLESVSRGFLRSNYEVKGHRDVQSFLSFGDQKYQVIQSWEHYR 164

CPU time: 0.02 user secs. 0.01 sys. secs 0.03 total secs.

Lambda	K	H
0.322	0.136	0.448

Gapped

Lambda	K	H
0.267	0.0410	0.140

Matrix: BLOSUM62

Gap Penalties: Existence: 11, Extension: 1

Number of Sequences: 1

Number of Hits to DB: 300

Number of extensions: 136

Number of successful extensions: 3

Number of sequences better than 10.0: 1

Number of HSP's better than 10.0 without gapping: 1

Number of HSP's gapped: 1

Number of HSP's successfully gapped: 1

Number of extra gapped extensions for HSPs above 10.0: 0

Length of query: 190

Length of database: 850,049,330

Length adjustment: 123

Effective length of query: 67

Effective length of database: 850,049,207

Effective search space: 56953296869

Effective search space used: 56953296869

Neighboring words threshold: 9

Window for multiple hits: 0

X1: 16 (7.4 bits)

X2: 129 (49.7 bits)

X3: 129 (49.7 bits)

S1: 41 (21.9 bits)

S2: 73 (32.7 bits)

Sequence 1: SEQ ID NO:3 from WO 97/29765 (bovine granulocyte peptide A precursor)

Sequence 2: SEQ ID NO:5 from WO 97/29765 (mouse granulocyte peptide A precursor)

Score = 188 bits (477), Expect = 1e-46

Identities = 100/180 (55%), Positives = 120/180 (66%), Gaps = 19/180 (10%)

Query: 9 AWVLLALLGLGAAQDCGSIVSRGKWGALASKCSQRLRQPVRYVVVSHTAGSVCNTPASCQ 68
 A LLALLGL A C IV R +W AL S+CS RL PVRVYV+SHT GS CN+ SC+
Sbjct: 4 ACALLALLGL--ATSCSFIVFRSEWRALPSECSSRLGHPVRYVVVISHTRGSFCSFDSCE 61

Query: 69 RQAQNVQYYHVRERGWCDVGYNFKIGEDGKVEGRGWNTKGDHSGPTWNPIAIGISFMGN 128
 +QA+NVQ+YH E WCDV YN K DH+ P +NP++IGI+FMGN
Sbjct: 62 QQARNVQHYHKNELEWCDVAYNI-----KEDHTEPIYNPMSIGITFMGN 105

Query: 129 YMHRVFFASALRAAQSLACGAARGYLTPNYEVKGHRDVQQTLSPGDELYKIIQQWPHYR 188
 +M RV A ALRAA +LL G +RG+L NYEVKGHRDVQ LS GD+ Y++IQ W HYR
Sbjct: 106 FMDRVRKA-ALRAALNLLESGVSRGFLRSNYEVKGHRDVQSFLSFGDQKYQVIQSWEHYR 164

CPU time: 0.02 user secs. 0.01 sys. secs 0.03 total secs.

Lambda	K	H
0.322	0.136	0.448

Gapped

Lambda	K	H
0.267	0.0410	0.140

Matrix: BLOSUM62

Gap Penalties: Existence: 11, Extension: 1

Number of Sequences: 1

Number of Hits to DB: 300

Number of extensions: 136

Number of successful extensions: 3

Number of sequences better than 10.0: 1

Number of HSP's better than 10.0 without gapping: 1

Number of HSP's gapped: 1

Number of HSP's successfully gapped: 1

Number of extra gapped extensions for HSPs above 10.0: 0

Length of query: 190

Length of database: 850,049,330

Length adjustment: 123

Effective length of query: 67

Effective length of database: 850,049,207

Effective search space: 56953296869

Effective search space used: 56953296869

Neighboring words threshold: 9

Window for multiple hits: 0

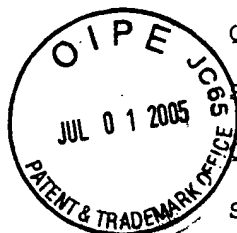
X1: 16 (7.4 bits)

X2: 129 (49.7 bits)

X3: 129 (49.7 bits)

S1: 41 (21.9 bits)

S2: 73 (32.7 bits)



Sequence 1: SEQ ID NO:3 from WO 97/29765 (bovine granulocyte peptide A precursor)

Sequence 2: SEQ ID NO:5 from WO 97/29765 (mouse granulocyte peptide A precursor)

Score = 188 bits (477), Expect = 1e-46

Identities = 100/180 (55%), Positives = 120/180 (66%), Gaps = 19/180 (10%)



Query: 9 AWWLLALLGLGAAQDCGSIVSRGKWGALASKCSQRLRQPVRYVVVSHTAGSVCNTPASCQ 68
A LLALLGL A C IV R +W AL S+CS RL PVRVYV+SHT GS CN+ SC+

Sbjct: 4 ACALLALLGL--ATSCSFIVFRSEWRALPSECSSRLGHPVRYVVISHTRGSFCNSFDSCE 61

Query: 69 RQAQNVQYYHVRERGWCDVGYNFKIGEDGKVYEGRGWNTKGDHSGPTWNPIAIGISFMGN 128
+QA+NVQ+YH E WCDV YN K DH+ P +NP++IGI+FMGN

Sbjct: 62 QQARNVQHYHKNELEWCDVAYNI-----KEDHTEPIYNPMSIGITFMGN 105

Query: 129 YMHRVFFASALRAAQSLACGAARGYLTPNYEVKGHRDVQQTLSPGDELYKIIQQWPHYR 188
+M RV A ALRAA +LL G +RG+L NYEVKGHRDVQ LS GD+ Y++IQ W HYR

Sbjct: 106 FMDRVKKA-ALRAALNLLESGVSRGFLRSNYEVKGHRDVQSFLSFGDQKYQVIQSWEHYR 164

CPU time: 0.02 user secs. 0.01 sys. secs 0.03 total secs.

Lambda	K	H
0.322	0.136	0.448

Gapped

Lambda	K	H
0.267	0.0410	0.140

Matrix: BLOSUM62

Gap Penalties: Existence: 11, Extension: 1

Number of Sequences: 1

Number of Hits to DB: 300

Number of extensions: 136

Number of successful extensions: 3

Number of sequences better than 10.0: 1

Number of HSP's better than 10.0 without gapping: 1

Number of HSP's gapped: 1

Number of HSP's successfully gapped: 1

Number of extra gapped extensions for HSPs above 10.0: 0

Length of query: 190

Length of database: 850,049,330

Length adjustment: 123

Effective length of query: 67

Effective length of database: 850,049,207

Effective search space: 56953296869

Effective search space used: 56953296869

Neighboring words threshold: 9

Window for multiple hits: 0

X1: 16 (7.4 bits)

X2: 129 (49.7 bits)

X3: 129 (49.7 bits)

S1: 41 (21.9 bits)

S2: 73 (32.7 bits)

PCTWORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶: A61K 38/00, 38/04, 39/12, C07K 5/00, 7/00, 16/00, 17/00	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/29765 (43) International Publication Date: 21 August 1997 (21.08.97)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/02218 (22) International Filing Date: 13 February 1997 (13.02.97) (30) Priority Data: 60/011,834 16 February 1996 (16.02.96) US (71) Applicant: THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA [US/US]; 22nd floor, 300 Lakeside Drive, Oakland, CA 94612-3550 (US). (72) Inventor: SELSTED, Michael, E.; 16 Young Court, Irvine, CA 92715 (US). (74) Agent: BERLINER, Robert; Robbins, Berliner & Carson, 5th floor, 201 N. Figueroa Street, Los Angeles, CA 90012-2628 (US).		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i>
(54) Title: ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND METHODS OF USE		
(57) Abstract Novel antimicrobial peptides from bovine and murine neutrophils are provided. The peptides, designated bovine granulocyte peptide A (BGP-A) and murine granulocyte peptide A (MGP-A) were purified to homogeneity from peripheral blood granulocytes. The amino acid and nucleotide sequence of BGP-A and MGP-A are also provided. A synthetic version of BGP-A and MGP-A is also provided. The purified BGP-A peptide is shown to have antimicrobial activity indistinguishable from that of natural BGP-A. Synthetic carboxamidated analogs of BGP-A (BGP-A-amide) and MGP-A (MGP-A-amide) are also provided.		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND METHODS OF USE

This invention was made with Government support under Grant No. AI22931 awarded by the National Institutes of Health. The Government has certain rights in this invention.

5 1. *Field of the Invention*

This invention relates generally to antimicrobial peptides, and, more specifically, to peptides designated bovine granulocyte peptide -A (BGP-A), bovine granulocyte peptide -A-amide (BGP-A-amide), murine granulocyte peptide -A(MGP-A) and murine granulocyte peptide -A-amide (MGP-A-amide) and methods of uses thereof.

10 2. *Background of the Invention*

The cytoplasmic granules of polymorphonuclear leukocytes (neutrophils, granulocytes, PMNs) contain antimicrobial peptides that allow these cells to inactivate ingested microbial targets by mechanisms considered "oxygen independent" (Lehrer, R. I., *et al.*, *Blood* 76:2169-2181, 1990). These granule proteins constitute an antimicrobial arsenal that includes defensins (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Trends in Cell Biology* 5:114-119, 1995), β -defensins (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993), indolicidin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 1992), and other broad spectrum antibiotic peptides that are released into the phagosome during phagolysosome fusion. To date, members of the defensin family have been isolated from neutrophils of human (Ganz, T., *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.* 76:1427-1435, 1985), rabbit (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 260:4579-4584, 1985), rat (Eisenhauer, P., *et al.*, *Immun.* 58:3899-3902, 1990), and guinea pig origin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 55:2281-2286, 1987), and most recently from the Paneth cells of mouse small intestine (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 118:929-936, 1992). β -defensins have been isolated from the large granules of bovine neutrophils (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993), bovine tracheal epithelium (Diamond, G.M., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:3952-3956, 1991), and human plasma (Bensch, K. W., *et al.*, *FEBS Lett.* 368:331-

-2-

335), and indolicidin is a component of the large granules of bovine PMN (Van Abel, R.J., *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein* 45:401-409, 1995).

The unique features of ruminant granulocytes were first described by Gennaro and Baggiolini and coworkers (Baggiolini, M., *et al.*, *Lab. Invest.* 52:151-158, 1985; 5 Gennaro, R., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 96:1651-1661, 1983) who demonstrated that neutrophils of cattle, goats, sheep, and ibex are endowed with many unusually large cytoplasmic granules that are distinct from the classical azurophil and specific granules. Subsequent studies established that most of the antibacterial peptides of bovine neutrophils are contained in these unique organelles. Romeo and Gennaro have demonstrated that the 10 large granules of bovine neutrophils contain potent microbicidal peptides that are structurally distinct from defensins (Gennaro, R., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 57:3142-3146, 1989; Romeo, D., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263:9573-9575, 1988). These include three arginine-rich peptides, termed batenecins, which efficiently kill several gram positive and gram negative bacteria *in vitro*. Recently, the isolation and characterization of a 15 novel tridecapeptide amide, indolicidin, from bovine neutrophils was reported (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 1992). This cationic peptide was shown to be unusually rich in tryptophan, and to have potent bactericidal activity against *E. coli* and *S. aureus*. More recently the isolation of 13 β -defensins from bovine neutrophils demonstrated that these peptides are covalently dissimilar to defensins, while possessing 20 a similar folded conformation (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993).

-3-

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides peptides useful as antimicrobial agents. The invention arose from the discovery of a novel tridecapeptide from bovine peripheral blood granulocytes. The purified peptides and their carboxamide analogs have potent
5 antibacterial, antiviral, antiprotozoal, and antifungal activities. These peptides, designated BGP-A and MGP-A, are effective compounds for use in human and/or veterinary medicine, or as agents in agricultural, food science, or industrial applications for example.

The details of the preferred embodiment of the present invention are set forth in the
10 accompanying drawings and the description below. Once the details of the invention are known, numerous additional innovations and changes will become obvious to one skilled in the art.

-4-

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figure 1 shows chromatographs of the purification of BGP-A. Figure 1a shows the gel filtration chromatography of bovine neutrophil granule extract. Figure 1b shows the reversed phase HPLC of the peak E fractions.

- 5 Figure 2 shows the analysis of purified BGP-A. Figure 2a shows the analytical RP-HPLC. Figure 2b shows the acid-urea gel of purified BGP-A.

Figure 3 shows the acid-urea PAGE of purified BGP-A and BGP-A-amide.

Figure 4 shows the cDNA nucleotide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 2) and the deduced precursor amino acid peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 3) of BGP-A.

- 10 Figure 5 shows the cDNA nucleotide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 4) and the deduced precursor amino acid peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 5) of MGP-A.

- Figure 6 shows the mature BGP-A (SEQ ID NO: 6) and MGP-A (SEQ ID NO: 7) amino acid sequences. Hatched area indicates identical amino acids conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A. The consensus peptide amino acid sequence is identified as SEQ
15 ID NO: 1.

Figure 7 shows the microbicidal activities of natural and synthetic BGP-A and synthetic BGP-A-amide.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Before the present nucleic and amino acid sequences, compositions, reagents and methods and uses thereof are described, it is to be understood that this invention is not limited to the particular compositions, reagents, sequences and methodologies described
5 herein as such compositions, reagents, sequences and methodologies may vary. It is also to be understood that the terminology used herein is for the purpose of describing particular embodiments only, and that the terminology used herein is not intended to limit the scope of the present invention which will be limited only by the appended claims.

10 It must be noted that as used herein and in the appended claims, the singular forms "a," "an," and "the," include plural referents unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to "a reagent" includes one or more of such different reagents, reference to "an antibody" includes one or more of such different antibodies,
15 and reference to "the method" includes reference to equivalent steps and methods known to those of ordinary skill in the art that could be modified or substituted for the methods described herein.

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which the invention applies. Although any methods, compositions, reagents, sequences similar or
20 equivalent to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the invention, the preferred methods and materials are described herein. All publications mentioned herein are incorporated herein, including all figures, graphs, equations, illustrations, and drawings, to describe and disclose specific information for which the reference was cited in connection with.

25 The publications discussed above are provided solely for their disclosure before the filing date of the present application. Nothing herein is to be construed as an admission that the invention is not entitled to antedate such disclosure by virtue of prior invention.

-6-

Throughout this description, the preferred embodiment and examples shown should be considered as exemplars, rather than as limitations on the present invention.

During the purification of bovine granulocyte β -defensins, antimicrobial activity associated with a small peptide was detected that was different from any previously characterized. Presented herein is the purification, sequencing, synthesis, cDNA isolation, and antimicrobial properties of BGP-A, a thirteen-residue peptide antibiotic expressed in bovine granulocytes. The cDNA for a mouse homolog of BGP-A, isolated from mouse bone marrow and designated MGP-A, is also presented. The deduced MGP-A precursor was remarkably similar to that of BGP-A. The present invention also teaches the synthesis and antimicrobial properties of BGP-A-amide and MGP-A-amide which are analogs of BGP-A and MGP-A respectively.

The invention provides peptide molecules, designated bovine granulocyte peptide -A (BGP-A) and mouse granulocyte peptide -A (MGP-A) and their synthetic carboxamides, designated BGP-A-amide and MGP-A-amide; which exhibit a broad range of antimicrobial and antiprotozoal activity and consequently, are effective antimicrobial agents. Polynucleotides encoding BGP-A and MGP-A represent a new class of antimicrobial peptide genes. As demonstrated by the high conservation of the precursor structure in a ruminant and a rodent, this gene family appears to be remarkably conserved. In a manner similar to the generating of indolicidin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Peptides: Chemistry and Biology*, ESCOM J.A. Smith and J.E. Rivier, 1992, pp. 905-907), the peptide is synthesized as a much larger prepropeptide and subsequently packaged in granules as the mature product of proteolytic processing. The methods used for the isolation and purification of BGP-A and MGP-A peptides are similar to those previously used for defensin-like peptides; such methods are taught in U.S. Patent Serial Nos. 4,453,252, 4,659,692, 4,705,777 and 5,242,902, all of which are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

As used herein, the term "antimicrobial activity" refers to the ability of a compound to inhibit or irreversibly prevent the growth of a microorganism. Such inhibition or

-7-

prevention can be through a microbicidal action or microbistatic inhibition. Therefore, the term "microbicidal inhibition" or "inhibition of microbial growth" as used herein refers to the ability of the antimicrobial peptide to kill, or irrevocably damage the target organism. The term "microbistatic inhibition" as used herein refers to the growth of the target organism without death. Microbicidal or microbistatic inhibition can be applied to an environment either presently exhibiting microbial growth (i.e., therapeutic treatment) or an environment at risk of sustaining or supporting such growth (i.e., prevention or prophylaxis).

As used herein, the term "environment capable of sustaining or supporting microbial growth" refers to a fluid, tissue, space, organ, surface substance or organism where microbial growth can occur or where microbes can exist. Such environments can be, for example, animal tissue; skin or bodily fluids, water and other liquids, food, food products or food extracts, surfaces, crops and certain inanimate objects. It is not necessary that the environment promote the growth of the microbe, only that it permits its subsistence.

The antimicrobial, or antibacterial, activity of BGP-A or MGP-A can be measured against various pathogens by one of ordinary skill in the art. Microorganisms are grown to appropriate concentration, mixed with an appropriate medium, such as an agarose trypticase soy medium, and contacted with BGP-A or MGP-A. After appropriate incubation, the antimicrobial activity is apparent from clear zones surrounding the antibacterial samples. The clear zones are dependent upon the concentration of the peptide. Further methods of determination of antimicrobial activity are taught in Example 5 and in the section entitled "Materials and Methods" herein and are commonly known by those in the art.

Additionally, the minimum inhibitory concentrations (MIC) of BGP-A or MGP-A to effect antimicrobial activity can be determined for a number of different microorganisms according to standard techniques. Briefly, cells are grown overnight at about 37°C in appropriate bacterial media and diluted in the same medium to give

-8-

concentrations of about 10^4 to 10^5 CFU/ml. The broth dilutions are set up in a 96 well microtiter plate, for example, mixing combinations of serially diluted microbes and peptides. After additions of serially diluted bacteria, or other microbes with serially diluted peptide concentrations, the plates are incubated overnight at about 37°C. The
5 next day the plates are scored for the presence or absence of microbial growth in the wells, and the MIC is determined from the scoring.

As used herein, the term's BGP-A, BGP-A-amide, MGP-A and MGP-A-amide refer to peptides or peptidomimetics having generally about 8 to 20 amino acids which make up a chain having a net positive charge. In other words, these are cationic peptides. The
10 peptides of the invention preferably have one or more aromatic amino acids. Illustrative peptide sequences are provided in Figs. 4-6 and as set forth in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7.

The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) with a predicted 21 kD precursor protein composed of 190 residues (SEQ ID NO: 3). Within
15 the precursor peptide, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide. The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region containing 156 residues. The final 13 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence, YKIIQQWPHYRRV (SEQ ID NO: 6).

The full length MGP-A cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and
20 predicts a precursor peptide (SEQ ID NO: 4) comprising signal pro-peptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A (Fig. 5). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine MGP-A cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (YQVIQSWEHYRE) (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). A consensus sequence between the mature BGP and MGP peptides is set forth in Fig. 6 where the hatched area indicates
25 identical amino acids that are conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A and in SEQ ID NO: 1 having an amino acid sequence of YXXIXXWXHYR, where X can be any amino acid. The peptides of the present invention include the SEQ ID NO: 1 consensus sequence. While not wanting to be bound by a particular theory, it is believed that the

-9-

C-terminus should contain a net positive charge so that the molecule remains active. For example, SEQ ID NO: 1, 6 and 7 all end with an arginine (R) residue, SEQ ID NO: 6 ends with an arginine (R) and valine (V), and SEQ ID NO: 7 ends with a glutamic acid (E) residue. Given that the invention provides both the consensus sequence
5 between mouse and bovine species and the individual DNA sequences encoding the peptides of the present invention, it would not require undue experimentation by the ordinary artisan to isolate homologous BGP/MGP sequences from other species, including human, porcine, ovine, etc., using the teachings supplied herein and methods common in the art (see Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold
10 Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference).

It should be appreciated that various modifications can be made to the BGP-A or MGP-A amino acid sequences without diminishing the antimicrobial activity of the peptides. It is intended that peptides or peptidomimetics of BGP-A or MGP-A exhibiting such
15 modifications, including amino acid additions, deletions or substitutions are within the scope of the invention. As used herein, the term "substantially the same sequence" refers to a peptide sequence either identical to, or having considerable homology with, for example, the sequences BGP-A or MGP-A as shown in Figs. 4, 5, and 6 and in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7. It is understood that limited modifications can be made to
20 the peptide which result in enhanced function. Likewise, it is also understood that limited modifications can be made without destroying the biological function of the peptide and that only part of the entire primary structure may be required to affect activity. For example, minor modifications of these sequences that do not completely destroy the activity also fall within this definition and within the definition of the
25 compound claimed as such. Modifications can include, for example, additions, deletions, or substitutions of amino acid residues, substitutions with compounds that mimic amino acid structure or function as well as the addition of chemical moieties such as amino and acetyl groups. The modifications can be deliberate or can be accidental such as through mutation in hosts that produce BGP-A or MGP-A peptides exhibiting

-10-

antimicrobial activity. All these modifications are included as long as the peptide retains its antimicrobial activity.

In some cases, it may be desirable to incorporate one or more non-natural amino acids in the synthetic peptides of the present invention. Possible non-natural amino acids will usually have at least an N-terminus and a C-terminus and will have side chains that are either identical to or chemically modified or substituted from a natural amino acid counter part. An example of a non-natural amino acid is an optical isomer of a naturally-occurring L-amino acid. All peptides were synthesized using L amino acids, however, all D forms of the peptides can be synthetically produced. In addition, C-terminal derivatives can be produced, such as C-terminal methyl esters, to increase the antimicrobial activity of a peptide of the invention. Numerous modifications are contemplated according to this invention. Besides the obvious approach of replacement of specific residues in the natural sequence, an alternative embodiment involves synthesis of the peptide from D-amino acids thus reducing potential inactivation by proteases. Such means are well known in the art. (See, for example, Wade *et al.*, *PNAS, USA* 87:4761-4765, 1990.) Examples of chemical modification or substitutions may include hydroxylation or fluorination of C-H bonds within natural amino acids. Such techniques are used in the manufacture of drug analogs of biological compounds and are known to those of ordinary skill in the art. In a preferred embodiment the modification of the peptides of the invention comprises modification by a carboxy terminal amide. Those of skill in the art can make similar substitutions to achieve peptides with greater antimicrobial activity and a broader host range. For example, the invention includes the peptides as set forth in SEQ ID NO:1, 3, 5, 6 and 7, as well as analogues, derivatives or functional fragments thereof, as long as the antimicrobial activity of the peptide remains. Minor modifications of the primary amino acid sequence of the peptides of the invention may result in peptides which have substantially equivalent antimicrobial activity as compared to the specific peptides as set forth in the SEQ ID NOS: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7 described herein. Such modifications may be deliberate, as by site-directed mutagenesis, or may be spontaneous. All of the peptides produced by these modifications are included herein as long as the antimicrobial biological

-11-

activity of the original peptide still exists. BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the present invention also include functional fragments of the peptide or functional fragments of the nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide, as long as the activity of BGP-A or MGP-A remains. Smaller peptides containing the biological activity of BGP-A or MGP-A are also included in the invention as are smaller nucleic acid sequences encoding for all or a functional fragment of the peptide. The relative effectiveness of the functional fragments of the peptide or nucleic acid sequences encoding for functional fragments of the peptides of the invention can be readily determined by one of skill in the art by establishing the sensitivity of a microorganism to the peptide fragment. The effectiveness of the peptide functional fragments is assessed by measuring the potential microbicidal or microbistatic activity of the fragment or nucleic acid sequence encoding such a fragment as measured relative to the microbicidal ability of the BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of SEQ ID NO: 6 or 7 respectively. Testing is carried out as described in the section titled "Antimicrobial Assay" in the Materials and Methods section herein and in Example 5 of the present invention or by other standard antimicrobial tests (e.g., MIC) commonly known to those in the art.

Further, deletion of one or more amino acids can also result in a modification of the structure of the resultant peptide without significantly altering its biological activity. This can lead to the development of a smaller active peptide which would also have utility. For example, amino or carboxy terminal amino acids which may not be required for biological activity of the particular peptide can be removed. Peptides of the invention include any analog, homolog, mutant, isomer or derivative of the peptides disclosed in the present invention, so long as the bioactivity as described herein is remains. The methods and compositions of the present invention may also employ synthetic non-peptide compositions that have biological activity functionally comparable to that of BGP-A, MGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, or MGP-A-Amide. By "functionally comparable," it is meant that the shape, size, flexibility, and electronic configuration of the non-peptide molecule are such that the biological activity of the molecule is similar to the BGP-A, MGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, or MGP-A-Amide peptides. In particular, the non-peptide molecules should display comparable antimicrobial activity. Such non-

-12-

peptide molecules can be small molecules having a molecular weight in the range of about 100 to 1000 Daltons. The use of such small molecules is advantageous in the preparation of pharmacological compositions.

The identification of such non-peptide analog molecules can be performed using techniques known in the art of drug design. Such techniques include, but are not limited to, self-consistent field (SCF) analysis, configuration interaction (CI) analysis, and normal mode dynamics computer analysis, all of which are well described in the scientific literature. See, e.g., Rein et al., *Computer-Assisted Modeling of Receptor-Ligand Interactions*, Alan Liss, N.Y., (1989). Preparation of the identified compounds will depend on the desired characteristics of the compounds will involve standard chemical synthetic techniques. See, Cary et al., *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, part B, Plenum Press, New York (1983).

The term "conservative variation" as used herein denotes the replacement of an amino acid residue by another, biologically similar residue. Examples of conservative variations include the substitution of one hydrophobic residue such as isoleucine, valine, leucine or methionine for another, or the substitution of one polar residue for another, such as the substitution of arginine for lysine, glutamic for aspartic acid, or glutamine for asparagine, and the like. The term "conservative variation" also includes the use of a substituted amino acid in place of an unsubstituted parent amino acid provided that antibodies raised to the substituted peptide also immunoreact with the unsubstituted peptide.

The BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the present invention can be synthesized by methods well known in the art, such as through the use of automatic peptide synthesizers, by recombinant methods or well-known manual methods of peptide synthesis. In addition, they can be purified from natural sources such as white blood cells and from bone marrow of a vertebrate, preferably of mammalian origin. Such cells or tissues can be obtained by means well known to those skilled in the art.

-13-

The term "substantially pure" as used herein refers to BGP-A or MGP-A nucleic acid or protein which is substantially free of other proteins, lipids, carbohydrates or other materials with which it is naturally associated or that the peptide or protein so designated has been separated from its *in vivo* cellular environment. Because of the separation and purification, the substantially pure peptides and proteins are useful in ways that the non-separated impure peptides or proteins are not. One skilled in the art can purify BGP-A or MGP-A using standard techniques for protein purification. The substantially pure peptide will yield a single major band on an acid-urea gel. The purity of the BGP-A or MGP-A peptide can also be determined by amino-terminal amino acid sequence analysis and analytical RP-HPLC.

The invention also provides polynucleotides encoding the BGP-A or MGP-A protein. These polynucleotides include DNA, cDNA and RNA sequences which encode BGP-A or MGP-A. It is understood that all polynucleotides encoding all or a portion of BGP-A or MGP-A are also included herein, as long as they encode a peptide with BGP-A or MGP-A activity. Such polynucleotides include naturally occurring, synthetic, and intentionally manipulated polynucleotides. For example, BGP-A or MGP-A polynucleotide may be subjected to site-directed mutagenesis. The polynucleotides of the invention include sequences that are degenerate as a result of the genetic code. There are 20 natural amino acids, most of which are specified by more than one codon. Therefore, all degenerate nucleotide sequences are included in the invention as long as the amino acid sequence of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide encoded by the nucleotide sequence is functionally unchanged. The polynucleotide encoding BGP-A or MGP-A includes the nucleotide sequence in FIGURE 4 and 5 (SEQ ID NOS: 2 and 4), as well as complementary nucleic acid sequences. A complementary sequence may include an antisense nucleotide. When the sequence is RNA, the deoxynucleotides A, G, C, and T of SEQ ID Nos: 2 and 4 are replaced by ribonucleotides A, G, C, and U, respectively. Also included in the invention are fragments of the above-described nucleic acid sequences that are at least 15 bases in length, which is sufficient to permit the fragment to selectively hybridize to DNA (SEQ ID NOS: 2 and 4) that encodes the protein of FIGURE 4 and 5 (SEQ ID NOS: 3 and 5), under physiological conditions.

-14-

Also, provided by this invention are the nucleic acid sequences encoding the BGP-A or MGP-A peptides, vectors and host cells containing them and methods of expression to provide recombinantly produced peptides. This method comprises growing the host cell containing a nucleic acid encoding a peptide under suitable conditions such that the
5 nucleic acid is transmitted and/or translated and isolating the peptide so produced.

After the peptide of this invention is isolated, nucleic acids encoding the peptides are isolated by methods well known in the art, *infra*. These isolated nucleic acids can be ligated into vectors and introduced into suitable host cells for expression. Methods of ligation and expression of nucleic acids within cells are well known in the art, (see
10 Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference).

Specifically disclosed herein is a cDNA sequence containing the active portion of the BGP-A or MGP-A coding sequence. One of skill in the art could now use this sequence
15 to isolate other full length clones. The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) and predicts a 21 kD precursor composed of 190 residues (Fig. 4; SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the BGP-A precursor, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide (Von Heijne, G., *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133:17-21, 1983). The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region
20 containing 156 residues. The final 13 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 6). The full-length MGP-A cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor comprising signal propeptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5). Based on this similarity, this sequence isolated from murine bone marrow cDNA is designated
25 as murine neutrophil peptide A (MGP-A; Fig. 5; SEQ ID NOs: 5 and 7). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). The hatched area in Figure 6 indicates identical amino acids conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A. The consensus peptide amino acid sequence is YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), where X can be any amino acid.

-15-

DNA sequences of the invention can be obtained by several methods. For example, the DNA can be isolated using hybridization techniques which are well known in the art. These include, but are not limited to: 1) hybridization of genomic or cDNA libraries with probes to detect homologous nucleotide sequences, 2) polymerase chain reaction (PCR) on genomic DNA or cDNA using primers capable of annealing to the DNA sequence of interest, and 3) antibody screening of expression libraries to detect cloned DNA fragments with shared structural features. The sequences of a pair of nucleic acid molecules (or two regions within a single nucleic acid molecule) are said to be "complementary" to each other if base pairing interactions can occur between each nucleotide of one of the members of the pair and each nucleotide of the other member of the pair. A pair of nucleic acid molecules (or two regions within a single nucleic acid molecule) are said to "hybridize" to each other if they form a duplex by base pairing interactions between them. As known in the art, hybridization between nucleic acid pairs does not require complete complementarity between the hybridizing regions, but only that there is a sufficient level of base pairing to maintain the duplex under the hybridization conditions used.

Hybridization reactions are typically carried out under low to moderate stringency conditions, in which specific and some nonspecific interactions can occur. After hybridization, washing can be carried out under moderate or high stringency conditions to eliminate nonspecific binding. As known in the art, optimal washing conditions can be determined empirically, *e.g.*, by gradually increasing the stringency. Condition parameters that can be changed to affect stringency include, *e.g.*, temperature and salt concentration. In general, the lower the salt concentration and the higher the temperature, the higher the stringency. For example, washing can be initiated at a low temperature (*e.g.*, room temperature) using a solution containing an equivalent or lower salt concentration as the hybridization solution. Subsequent washing can be carried out using progressively warmer solutions having the same salt solution. Alternatively, the salt concentration can be lowered and the temperature maintained in the washing step, or the salt concentration can be lowered and the temperature increased. Additional

-16-

parameters can be altered to affect stringency, including, *e.g.*, the use of a destabilizing agent, such as formamide.

In nucleic acid hybridization reactions, the conditions used to achieve a particular level of stringency will vary, depending on the nature of the nucleic acids being hybridized.

- 5 For example, the length, degree of complementarity, nucleotide sequence composition (*e.g.*, GC v. AT content), and nucleic acid type (*e.g.*, RNA v. DNA) of the hybridizing regions of the nucleic acids can be considered in selecting hybridization conditions. An additional consideration is whether one of the nucleic acids is immobilized, for example, on a filter.
- 10 An example of progressively higher stringency conditions is as follows: 2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about room temperature (hybridization conditions); 0.2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about room temperature (low stringency conditions); 0.2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about 42°C (moderate stringency conditions); and 0.1 x SSC at about 68°C (high stringency conditions). Washing can be carried out using only one of these conditions, *e.g.*, high
- 15 stringency conditions, or each of the conditions can be used, *e.g.*, for 10-15 minutes each, in the order listed above, repeating any or all of the steps listed. However, as mentioned above, optimal conditions will vary, depending on the particular hybridization reaction involved, and can be determined empirically.

- Preferably the BGP-A or MGP-A polynucleotide of the invention is derived from a
- 20 mammalian organism, and most preferably from a mouse, cow, or human. Screening procedures which rely on nucleic acid hybridization make it possible to isolate any gene sequence from any organism, provided the appropriate probe is available. Oligonucleotide probes, which correspond to a part of the sequence encoding the protein in question, can be synthesized chemically. This requires that short, oligopeptide
- 25 stretches of amino acid sequence must be known. The DNA sequence encoding the protein can be deduced from the genetic code, however, the degeneracy of the code must be taken into account. It is possible to perform a mixed addition reaction when the sequence is degenerate. This includes a heterogeneous mixture of denatured double-

-17-

stranded DNA. For such screening, hybridization is preferably performed on either single-stranded DNA or denatured double-stranded DNA. Hybridization is particularly useful in the detection of cDNA clones derived from sources where an extremely low amount of mRNA sequence relating to the peptide of interest is present. In other words, by using stringent hybridization conditions directed to avoid nonspecific binding, it is possible, for example, to allow the autoradiographic visualization of a specific cDNA clone by the hybridization of the target DNA to that single probe in the mixture which is its complete complement (Wallace, *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid Res.*, 9:879, 1981).

Therefore, given a partial DNA sequence of the BGP-A or MGP-A gene of interest, one of skill in the art would be able to prepare probes for isolation of a full length cDNA clone, without undue experimentation (see for example, Ausubel, *et al.*, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Units 6.3-6.4, Greene Publ., 1994; Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratories, current edition).

The compliment of specific DNA sequences encoding BGP-A or MGP-A can also be obtained by: 1) isolation of double-stranded DNA sequences from the genomic DNA; 2) chemical manufacture of a DNA sequence to provide the necessary codons for the peptide of interest; and 3) *in vitro* synthesis of a double-stranded DNA sequence by reverse transcription of mRNA isolated from a eukaryotic donor cell. In the latter case, a double-stranded DNA complement of mRNA is eventually formed which is generally referred to as cDNA. Of the three above-noted methods for developing specific DNA sequences for use in recombinant procedures, the isolation of genomic DNA isolates is the least common. This is especially true when it is desirable to obtain the microbial expression of mammalian peptides due to the presence of introns.

The synthesis of DNA sequences is frequently the method of choice when the entire sequence of amino acid residues of the desired peptide product is known. When the entire sequence of amino acid residues of the desired peptide is not known, the direct synthesis of DNA sequences is not possible and the method of choice is the synthesis of cDNA sequences. Among the standard procedures for isolating cDNA sequences of

-18-

- interest is the formation of plasmid- or phage-carrying cDNA libraries which are derived from reverse transcription of mRNA which is abundant in donor cells that have a high level of genetic expression. When used in combination with polymerase chain reaction technology, even rare expression products can be cloned. In those cases where
- 5 significant portions of the amino acid sequence of the peptide are known, the production of labeled single or double-stranded DNA or RNA probe sequences duplicating a sequence putatively present in the target cDNA may be employed in DNA/DNA hybridization procedures which are carried out on cloned copies of the cDNA which have been denatured into a single-stranded form (Jay, *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid*, 11:2325, 1983).
- 10 Several types of vectors are available and can be used to practice this invention, e.g., plasmid, DNA and RNA viral vectors, baculoviral vectors, and vectors for use in yeast. When the vector is a plasmid, it generally contains a variety of components including promoters, signal sequences, phenotypic selection genes, origins of replication sites, and other necessary components as are known to those of skill in the art.
- 15 Promoters most commonly used in prokaryotic vectors include the lac Z promoter system, the alkaline phosphatase pho A promoter, the bacteriophage λ PL promoter (a temperature sensitive promotor), the tac promoter (a hybrid trp-lac promoter regulated by the lag repressor), the tryptophan promoter, and the bacteriophage T7 promoter.

- One other useful component of vectors used to practice this invention is a signal
- 20 sequence. This sequence is typically found immediately 5' to the nucleic acid encoding the peptide, and will thus be transcribed at the amino terminus of the fusion protein. However, in certain cases, the signal sequence has been demonstrated to be at positions other than 5' to the gene encoding the protein to be secreted. This sequence targets the protein to which it is attached across the inner membrane of the bacterial cell. The
- 25 DNA encoding the signal sequence can be obtained as a restriction endonuclease fragment from any nucleic acid encoding a peptide that has a signal sequence. Suitable prokaryotic signal sequences can be obtained from genes encoding, for example Lamb or OmpF (Wong, *et al*, *Gene* 68:193, 1983), MalE, PhoA, OmpA and other genes. A

-19-

preferred prokaryotic signal sequence for practicing this invention is the *E. coli* heat-stable enterotoxin II (STII) signal sequence as described by Chang, *et al*, *Gene* 55:189, 1987.

Another useful component of the vectors used to practice this invention is a phenotypic selection gene. Typical phenotypic selection genes are those encoding proteins that confer antibiotic resistance upon the host cell. By way of illustration, the ampicillin resistance gene (amp) and the tetracycline resistance gene (tet) are readily employed for this purpose.

Construction of suitable vectors comprising the aforementioned components as well as the gene encoding the desired peptide are prepared using standard recombinant DNA procedures. Isolated DNA fragments to be combined to form the vector are cleaved, tailored, and ligated together in a specific order and orientation to generate the desired vector.

The DNA is prepared according to standard procedures (see Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference). If the DNA fragment is to be ligated into a vector, the vector is at first linearized by cutting with the appropriate restriction endonucleases. The linearized vector can then be treated with alkaline phosphatase or calf intestinal phosphatase. The phosphatasing prevents self-ligation of the vector during the ligation step.

After ligation, the vector with the heterologous gene now inserted is transformed into a suitable host cell. Suitable prokaryotic host cells include *E. coli* strain JM101, *E. coli* K12 strain 294 (ATCC number 31,446), *E. coli* strain W3110 (ATCC number 27,325), *E. coli* X1776 (ATCC number 31, 537), *E. coli* XL-1Blue (Stratagene), and *E. coli* B; however, many other strains of *E. coli*, such as HB101, NM522, NM538, NM539 and many other species and genera of prokaryotes can be used as well. Besides the *E. coli* strains listed above, bacilli such as *Bacillus subtilis*, other enterobacteriaceae such as

-20-

Salmonella typhimurium or *Serratia marcesans* and various *Pseudomonas* species can all be used as hosts.

Transformation of prokaryotic cells is readily accomplished using calcium chloride or other methods well known to those skilled in the art. Electroporation (Neumann, *et al.*, 5 *EMBO J.* 1:841, 1982) also can be used to transform these cells. The transformed cells are selected by growth on an antibiotic, commonly tetracycline (tet) or ampicillin (amp), to which they are rendered resistant due to the presence of tet and/or amp resistance genes on the vector.

After selection of the transformed cells, these cells are grown in culture and the plasmid 10 DNA (or other vector with the foreign gene inserted) is then isolated. Plasmid DNA can be isolated using methods known in the art. This purified plasmid DNA is then analyzed by restriction mapping and/or DNA sequencing.

Following procedures outlined above, mammalian cell lines such as myeloma (P3-653), hybridoma (SP2/0), Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO), Green monkey kidney (COSI) and 15 murine fibroblasts (L492) are suitable host cells for peptide expression. These "mammalian" vectors can include a promoter, an enhancer, a polyadenylation signal, signal sequences and genes encoding selectable markers such as geneticin (neomycin resistance), mycophenolic acid (xanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase) or histidinol (histidinol dehydrogenase).

20 Suitable promoters for use in mammalian host cells include, but are not limited to, Ig Kappa, Ig Gamma, Cytomegalovirus (CMV) immediate early, Rous Sarcoma Virus (RSV), Simian virus 40 (SV40) early, mouse mammary tumor (MMTV) virus and metallothionein. Suitable enhancers include, but are not limited to, Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy, CMV early and SV40. Suitable polyadenylation sequences include Ig Kappa, Ig Gamma 25 or SV40 large T antigen. Suitable signal sequences include Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy and human growth hormone (HGH).

-21-

When the vector is baculovirus, suitable promoters and enhancer sequences include, but are not limited to, AcMGPV polyhedrin, AcMGPV ETL and AcMGPV p10 sequences. One particularly suitable polyadenylation signal is the polyhedrin AcMGPV. Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy and AcMGPV are examples of suitable signal sequences. These vectors are
5 useful in the following insect cell lines, among others: SF9, SF21 and High 5.

Alternatively, the peptides can be expressed in yeast strains such as PS23-6A, W301-18A, LL20, D234-3, INVSC1, INVSC2, YJJ337. Promoter and enhancer sequences such as gal 1 and pEFT-1 are useful. Vra-4 also provides a suitable enhancer sequence. Sequences useful as functional "origins of replication" include ars1 and 2 μ circular
10 plasmid.

The invention includes antibodies that are immunoreactive with BGP-A or MGP-A peptides or fragments thereof. Antibodies which consist essentially of pooled monoclonal antibodies with different epitopic specificities, as well as distinct monoclonal antibody preparations are provided. Monoclonal antibodies are made from antigen
15 containing fragments of the protein by methods well known to those skilled in the art (Kohler, *et al.*, *Nature*, 256:495, 1975). Anti-BGP-A or MGP-A antibodies can be made by methods conventional in the art. For example, polyclonal antiserum can be raised in appropriate animals, such as rabbits, mice, or rats. BGP-A or MGP-A peptides, either synthetically obtained or naturally obtained, can be used to immunize the animal. The
20 immunogen can then be used to immunize animals by means well known to those skilled in the art. Serum samples are collected until the anti-BGP-A or MGP-A titer is appropriate. Various fractions of the antisera, such as IgG, can be isolated by means well known in the art. Alternatively, BGP-A or MGP-A immunogens can be used to obtain monoclonal antibodies, again by means well known in the art. (*See*, for example,
25 Harlow *et al.*, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Springs Harbor Laboratory, 1988.)

Anti-BGP-A or MGP-A antibodies can be used to detect the presence of BGP-A or MGP-A in biological samples, such as histological samples. An appropriate detectable

-22-

second antibody can be used to identify the primary antibody attached to the BGP-A or MGP-A by visualization. Means of detection include the use of radioactive nucleotides or enzyme substrates such as peroxidase. For example, anti-BGP-A was produced by standard methods and shown to stain bone marrow preparations from cattle (cytological sample). In particular, granulocytes (e.g., eosinophils) were stained heavily for BNP-A.

The term "antibody" as used in this invention includes intact molecules as well as fragments thereof, such as Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, and Fv that can bind the epitopic determinant. These antibody fragments retain some ability selectively to bind with its antigen or receptor and are defined as follows:

- 10 (1) Fab, the fragment that contains a monovalent antigen-binding fragment of an antibody molecule can be produced by digestion of whole antibody with the enzyme papain to yield an intact light chain and part of one heavy chain;
- (2) Fab', the fragment of an antibody molecule can be obtained by treating whole antibody with pepsin, followed by reduction, to yield an intact light chain and
15 part of the heavy chain; two Fab' fragments are obtained per antibody molecule;
- (3) (Fab')₂, the fragment of the antibody that can be obtained by treating whole antibody with the enzyme pepsin without subsequent reduction; F(ab')₂ is a dimer of two Fab' fragments held together by two disulfide bonds;
- (4) Fv, defined as a genetically engineered fragment containing the variable region
20 of the light chain and the variable region of the heavy chain expressed as two chains; and

-23-

(5) Single chain antibody ("SCA"), defined as a genetically engineered molecule containing the variable region of the light chain, the variable region of the heavy chain, linked by a suitable peptide linker as a genetically fused single chain molecule.

5 Methods of making these fragments are known in the art. (See for example, Harlow and Lane, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, New York (current edition), incorporated herein by reference).

As used in this invention, the term "epitope" means any antigenic determinant on an antigen to which the paratope of an antibody binds. Epitopic determinants usually
10 consist of chemically active surface groupings of molecules such as amino acids or sugar side chains and usually have specific three dimensional structural characteristics, as well as specific charge characteristics.

If needed, polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies can be further purified, for example, by binding to and elution from a matrix to which the peptide or a peptide to which the
15 antibodies are raised is bound. Those of skill in the art will know of various techniques common in the immunology arts for purification and/or concentration of polyclonal antibodies, as well as monoclonal antibodies (See, e.g., Coligan, *et al.*, Unit 9, *Current Protocols in Immunology*, Wiley Interscience, current edition, incorporated by reference).

20 It is also possible to use the anti-idiotypic technology to produce monoclonal antibodies that mimic an epitope. For example, an anti-idiotypic monoclonal antibody made to a first monoclonal antibody will have a binding domain in the hypervariable region that is the "image" of the epitope bound by the first monoclonal antibody.

The phrase "purified antibody" means an antibody that is at least 60%, by weight, free
25 from proteins and naturally-occurring organic molecules with which it is naturally associated. Preferably, the preparation is at least 75%, more preferably 90%, and most

-24-

preferably at least 99%, by weight, an antibody, *e.g.*, an anti-BGP-A specific antibody. A purified antibody may be obtained, for example, by affinity chromatography using recombinantly-produced protein or conserved motif peptides and standard techniques. The invention can employ not only intact monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies, but also
5 an immunologically-active antibody fragment, such as a Fab, Fab' or (Fab')₂ fragments, or a genetically engineered Fv fragment (Ladner *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 4,946,788).

"Specifically binds" means an antibody that recognizes and binds a specified protein, *e.g.*, an anti-BGP-A, specific antibody or anti-MGP-A specific antibody, which does not substantially recognize and bind other molecules in a sample which naturally includes
10 protein.

It should be understood that the compositions of the present invention have activity against many microorganisms, such as fungi, bacteria (both gram positive and negative), and protozoa and viruses. Different compositions will have differing degrees of activities toward different organisms. The peptides of the present invention may also
15 be combined with other proteins to act as preservatives to protect the proteins against bacterial degradation. Alternatively, the subject peptides or compositions may be used as preservatives and disinfectants in many formulations, such as contact lens solutions, ointments, shampoos, medicaments, foods, and the like. The amount of peptide employed in the compositions may vary depending upon the nature of the other
20 components, how much protection is required and the intended use of the composition.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides administration of a therapeutic amount of an antimicrobial peptide of the invention. One or more of the peptides disclosed herein, may have utility as antifungal agents, either alone, or as lipid fascicle preparations. The latter approach has been used with success with the non-
25 peptide antifungal drug amphotericin. Specific applications would be dependent on the pathogen targeted. For example, *C. albicans*, the common cause of mucocutaneous fungal disease in AIDS patients, which is extremely susceptible to several β -defensins, might be controlled in these individuals more effectively by a BGP-A or MGP-A based

-25-

therapeutic or in combination with existing first line drugs. Similarly, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used therapeutically in veterinary medicine. One advantage of the therapeutic use of the present invention is that the peptides exhibit low immunogenicity.

5 BGP-A or MGP-A, either purified from natural sources or synthetic, can be administered to a subject in need of therapy by various means, including oral administration, preferably in a slow-release type formulation that will avoid release within the stomach. Alternatively, they can be administered through a nasal gastric incubation or transabdominal catheter. Individual species of BGP-A or MGP-A can be administered singly or a combination can be administered simultaneously or sequentially
10 and also with other antimicrobial compositions.

The invention further provides a pharmaceutical composition for treating a human bacterial or fungal infection that comprises the purified peptide of the invention in an amount effective to treat a human bacterial or fungal infection and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 The method of inhibiting the growth of bacteria may further include the addition of antibiotics for combination or synergistic therapy. The appropriate antibiotic administered will typically depend on the susceptibility of the bacteria such as whether the bacteria is gram negative or gram positive, and will be easily discernable by one of skill in the art. Examples of particular classes of antibiotics useful for synergistic
20 therapy with the peptides of the invention include aminoglycosides (*e.g.*, tobramycin), penicillins (*e.g.*, piperacillin), cephalosporins (*e.g.*, ceftazidime), fluoroquinolones (*e.g.*, ciprofloxacin), carbapenems (*e.g.*, imipenem), tetracyclines and macrolides (*e.g.*, erythromycin and clarithromycin). The method of inhibiting the growth of bacteria may further include the addition of antibiotics for combination or synergistic therapy. The
25 appropriate antibiotic administered will typically depend on the susceptibility of the bacteria such as whether the bacteria is gram negative or gram positive, and will be easily discernable by one of skill in the art. Further to the antibiotics listed above, typical antibiotics include aminoglycosides (amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin,

-26-

netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucetate/lactobionate/stearate), beta-lactams such as penicillins (e.g., penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin, azlocillin and
5 piperacillin), or cephalosporins (e.g., cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, and cefsulodin). Other classes of antibiotics include carbapenems (e.g., imipenem), monobactams (e.g., aztreonam), quinolones (e.g., fleroxacin, nalidixic acid,
10 norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin and cinoxacin), tetracyclines (e.g., doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline), and glycopeptides (e.g., vancomycin, teicoplanin), for example. Other antibiotics include chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the treatment of the soluble proteins comprises
15 size exclusion chromatography, ion-exchange chromatography, or reverse phase, high performance, liquid chromatography. It will be appreciated by one skilled in the art, however, that treatment of soluble proteins to purify peptides may be accomplished by many methods known to those skilled in the art, all of which are contemplated by this invention. Further, in one embodiment of the invention, the treatment of granulocytes
20 to recover granules comprises density gradient centrifugation.

The invention also provides a composition that comprises the purified peptide in an amount effective to kill bacteria or fungi and a suitable carrier. Such composition may be used in numerous ways to combat bacteria or fungi, for example, in household or laboratory antimicrobial formulations using carriers well known in the art.

25 The compositions of the present invention can comprise the BGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, MGP-A, or MGP-A-Amide, either singly or in combination, incorporated in a physiologically-acceptable-carrier suitable for topical application. The compositions may contain from about 10 ug/ml to 2000 ug/ml, preferably 50 ug/ml to 500 ug/ml. The

-27-

nature of the carrier will vary depending on the intended area of application. For application to the skin, a cream or an ointment base is usually preferred with suitable bases including lanolin, Silvadene™ (Marion; particularly for the treatment of burns) Aquaphor™ (Duke Laboratories, South Norwalk, Conn.), and the like. It will also be possible to incorporate the BGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, MGP-A, or MGP-A-Amide peptides in natural and synthetic bandages and other wound dressings to provide for continuous exposure of a wound to the peptides. Aerosol applicators may also find use with the present invention.

Where the peptides are to be used as antimicrobial agents, they can be formulated in buffered aqueous media containing a variety of salts and buffers. The salts will for the most parts are alkali and alkaline earth halides, phosphates and sulfates, e.g., sodium chloride, potassium chloride or sodium sulfate. Various buffers may be used, such as citrate, phosphate, HEPES, Tris or the like to the extent that such buffers are physiologically acceptable to the host that is being treated.

Various excipients or other additives may be used, where the compounds are formulated as lyophilized powders, for subsequent use in solution. The excipients may include various polyols, inert powders or other extenders.

Depending on the nature of the formulation and the host, the subject compounds may be administered in a variety of ways. The formulations may be applied topically, by injection, e.g., intravenously, intraperitoneal, nasopharyngeal, etc.

In another aspect of the invention, compositions comprising the purified peptide of the invention in a microbicidal effective amount and a suitable carrier or pharmaceutical composition, or pharmaceutically acceptable carrier may additionally comprise a detergent. The addition of a detergent to such peptide compositions is useful to enhance the antibacterial, antiviral, or antifungal characteristics of the novel peptide of the invention. Although any suitable detergent may be used, the presently preferred detergent is a nonionic detergent, such as Tween 20 or 1% NP40.

-28-

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical formulation or composition for treating a human microbial, bacterial, viral, or fungal infection that comprises the purified peptide of the invention or a gene delivery and gene expression vector that can deliver an effective amount of peptide in an amount effective to treat a human microbial
5 bacterial, viral, or fungal infection incorporated into a pharmaceutically acceptable liposome or other delivery vehicle.

"Formulation" means a composition capable of gene delivery and gene expression, which can deliver a nucleotide sequence to, or directly into, a target cell whereupon the formulation containing the nucleotide sequence is incorporated on the cytoplasmic side
10 of the outermost membrane of the target cell and capable of achieving gene expression so that detectable levels of gene expression of the delivered nucleotide sequence are expressed in the target cell. More preferably, after delivery into the cytoplasmic side of the cell membrane the composition is subsequently transported, without undergoing endosomal or lytic degradation, into the nucleus of the target cell in a functional state
15 capable of achieving gene expression so that detectable levels of gene expression of the delivered nucleotide sequence are expressed in the target cell. Expression levels of the gene or nucleotide sequence inside the target cell can provide gene expression for a duration of time and in an amount such that the nucleotide product therein can provide a biologically beneficially effective amount of a gene product or in such an amount as
20 to provide a functionally beneficial biological effect. As used herein, the term formulation can refer to, but is not limited by (either explicitly or implicitly) the following examples: (1) liposome or liposome reagents or liposomal compositions either cationic, anionic or neutral in net character and net charge; (2) DNA, nucleic acid or a nucleic acid expression vector ionically complexed with a polycation/s and a ligand/s
25 such that after attachment of the [DNA + Polycation + Ligand] composition to a cell surface receptor on a target cell via the ligand, the [DNA + Polycation + Ligand] composition can be endocytosed into the target cell and the DNA is subsequently decoupled from the ligand and polycation and delivered to the cell nucleus in a functional condition for subsequent expression. Various alterations in the composition
30 can be envisioned by those of ordinary skill in the art such as including peptide

-29-

sequences that (a) protect the composition from endosomal lysis after incorporation into the target cell by allowing the composition to leave the lysosomal vesicle, or (b) which act as a nuclear targeting agent, chaperoning the nucleic acid through the pores of the nuclear envelope and into the nucleus of the cell. Similar reagents, which have been previously described, are the asialoglycoprotein-polylysine conjugations (Wu *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263:14621, 1988; Wu *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 264:16985, 1989); (3) naked nucleic acid; (4) compacted nucleic acid or a compacted reagent; or (5) plasmid or naked DNA that can be microinjected (Wolff *et al.*, *Science* 247:1465, 1990); (6) nucleic acid in a viral or retroviral vector composition; and (7) colloidal dispersions (Felgner *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7413, 1987; Ono *et al.*, *Neuroscience Lett.* 117:259, 1990; Brigham *et al.*, *Am. J. Med. Sci.* 298:278, 1989; Staubinger and Papahadjopoulos, *Meth. Enz.* 101:512, 1983). One of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that other compositions for the delivery of nucleotide sequences to target cells may be envisioned.

It will be readily understood by those skilled in the art that any suitable pharmaceutically acceptable liposome may be used as a vehicle for the peptide of the present invention. Such liposomal compositions have activity against many microorganisms similar to the activity of other compositions of this invention discussed in more detail above. Additionally, these compositions may be administered in a variety of conventional and well-known ways as is also discussed in greater detail above.

"Therapeutically effective" as used herein, refers to an amount of formulation, composition, or reagent in a pharmaceutical acceptable carrier that is of sufficient quantity to ameliorate the state of the patient or animal so treated. "Ameliorate" refers to a lessening of the detrimental effect of the disease state or disorder in the recipient of the therapy. The subject of the invention is preferably a human, however, it can be envisioned that any animal can be treated in the method of the instant invention. The term "modulate" means enhance, inhibit, alter, or modify the expression or function of antimicrobial activity in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

-30-

Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier preparations for administration include sterile or aqueous or non-aqueous solutions, suspensions, and emulsions. Examples of non-aqueous solvents are propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, vegetable oils such as olive oil, and injectable organic esters such as ethyl oleate. Aqueous carriers include water, 5 alcoholic/aqueous solutions, emulsions or suspensions, including saline and buffered media. Parenteral vehicles include sodium chloride solution, Ringer's dextrose, dextrose and sodium chloride, lactated Ringer's, or fixed oils. The active therapeutic ingredient is often mixed with excipients that are pharmaceutically acceptable and compatible with the active ingredient. Suitable excipients include water, saline, dextrose, glycerol and 10 ethanol, or combinations thereof. Intravenous vehicles include fluid and nutrient replenishers, electrolyte replenishers, such as those based on Ringer's dextrose, and the like. Preservatives and other additives may also be present such as, for example, antimicrobial, antioxidants, chelating agents, and inert gases and the like.

Another therapeutic approach included within the invention involves direct 15 administration of reagents or compositions by any conventional administration techniques (for example but not restricted to local injection, inhalation, or administered systemically), to the subject with a microbial, bacterial, viral or fungal disorder. The reagent, formulation or composition may also be targeted to specific cells or receptors by any of the methods described herein. The actual dosage of reagent, formulation or 20 composition that modulates a microbial, bacterial, viral or fungal disorder depends on many factors, including the size and health of an organism, however one of ordinary skill in the art can use the following teachings describing the methods and techniques for determining clinical dosages (Spilker B., *Guide to Clinical Studies and Developing Protocols*, Raven Press Books, Ltd., New York, 1984, pp. 7-13, 54-60; 25 Spilker B., *Guide to Clinical Trials*, Raven Press, Ltd., New York, 1991, pp. 93-101; Craig C., and R. Stitzel, eds., *Modern Pharmacology*, 2d ed., Little, Brown and Co., Boston, 1986, pp. 127-33; T. Speight, ed., *Avery's Drug Treatment: Principles and Practice of Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 3d ed., Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, 1987, pp. 50-56; R. Tallarida, R. Raffa and P. McGonigle, *Principles in* 30 *General Pharmacology*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1988, pp. 18-20) to determine the

-31-

appropriate dosage to use; but, generally, in the range of about 0.1 mg/kg to 1000 mg/kg, more specifically between about 1.0 mg/kg and 500 mg/kg, and preferably from about 10 mg/kg and 100 mg/kg inclusive final concentration are administered per day to an adult in any pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier.

5 The peptides of the present invention can also be used to treat an LPS associated disorder. With reference to an LPS associated disorder, the term "therapeutically effective amount" as used herein for treatment of an LPS associated disorder such as endotoxemia or sepsis refers to the amount of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide sufficient to decrease the subject's response to LPS and decrease the symptoms of an LPS associated
10 disorder, such as sepsis. The term "therapeutically effective" therefore includes that the amount of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide sufficient to prevent, and preferably reduce by at least 50%, and more preferably sufficient to reduce by 90%, a clinically significant increase in the plasma level of LPS. The dosage ranges for the administration of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide are those large enough to produce the desired effect. Generally,
15 the dosage will vary with the age, condition, sex, and extent of the infection with bacteria or other agent as described above, in the patient and can be determined by one skilled in the art. The dosage can be adjusted by the individual physician in the event of any contraindications. In any event, the effectiveness of treatment can be determined by monitoring the level of LPS or LPS associated molecules, such as tumor necrosis
20 factor (TNF), in a patient. A decrease in serum LPS and TNF levels correlates positively with amelioration of the LPS associated disorder.

In a further embodiment, the present invention may be used as a food preservative or in treating food products to eliminate potential pathogens. The latter use might be targeted to the fish and poultry industries that have serious problems with enteric
25 pathogens which cause severe human disease. In another embodiment, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used as disinfectants, for use in any product that must remain microbial free. In a further embodiment, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used as antimicrobials for food crops, either as agents to reduce post harvest spoilage, or expressed transgenically to enhance host resistance. Because of the antibiotic, antimicrobial, and antiviral properties
30 of the peptides, they may also be used as preservatives or sterillants of materials

-32-

- susceptible to microbial or viral contamination. The BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the invention can be utilized as broad spectrum antimicrobial agents directed toward various specific applications. Such applications include use of the peptides as preservatives in processed foods (organisms including Salmonella, Yersinia, Shigella), either alone or in
5 combination with antibacterial food additives such as lysozymes; as a topical agent (Pseudomonas, Streptococcus) and to kill odor producing microbes (Micrococci). The relative effectiveness of the peptides of the invention for the applications described can be readily determined by one of skill in the art by determining the sensitivity of any organism to one of the peptides.
- 10 It is also possible to incorporate the peptides on devices or immaterial objects where microbial growth is undesirable as a method of microbicidal inhibition or microbistatic inhibition of microbial growth in an environment capable of sustaining microbial growth by administering to the devices or immaterial objects a microbicidal or microbistatical effective amount of peptide. Such devices or immaterial objects include, but are not
15 limited to, linens, cloth, plastics, implantable devices (e.g., heart pacemakers, surgical stents), surfaces or storage containers. Coating may be achieved by nonspecific absorption or covalent attachment.

EXAMPLES

- The following examples are intended to illustrate but not admitted to limit the invention
20 in any manner, shape, or form (either explicitly or implicitly), nor should they be so construed. While they are typical of those that might be used, other procedures, methodologies, or techniques known to those skilled in the art may be used alternatively.

-33-

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Bovine neutrophils. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMN) were purified from 1 L batches of fresh citrated bovine blood. Following sedimentation at 40 minutes at 700 x g and 37° C, the erythrocyte column was subjected to 7 seconds of hypotonic lysis, after which isotonicity was restored using 3x phosphate buffered saline. The leukocyte-rich suspension was then sedimented at 120 x g (4° C, 15 minutes). Residual erythrocytes were lysed by repeating this procedure 1 or 2 times. Aliquots were removed for quantitation by hemocytometry and differential counts. Preparations obtained by this procedure contained an average of 4×10^9 cells per L of whole blood of which $97 \pm 3\%$ were neutrophils. Preparations were treated with 2 mM diisopropylfluorophosphate (DFP). Neutrophil preparations were then cooled to 4° C for 20 minutes and disrupted by nitrogen cavitation in a Parr bomb (Borregaard, N., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 8 97:52-61, 1983). The cavitate was centrifuged at 800 x g for 10 minutes at 4° C, and the granule-containing supernatant was collected. Granules were harvested by centrifugation at 27,000 x G for 40 minutes and stored at -80° C.

PMN Granule extracts. Preparations of frozen granules from $1-5 \times 10^{10}$ PMN were extracted with 5 ml of ice cold 10% acetic acid per 1×10^9 cell equivalents. After stirring on ice for 18 hours, the suspension was clarified by centrifugation at 27,000 x G for 20 minutes at 4° C and the supernatants were lyophilized and stored at -70° C.

Size exclusion chromatography. Lyophilized granule extract was dissolved in 10% acetic acid at a concentration of ca. 1×10^9 cell equivalents per ml, clarified by centrifugation, and loaded onto a 4.8 x 110 cm column of BioGel P-60 equilibrated in 5% acetic acid. The column was run at 8° C with an elution rate of 2 cm per hour, and 15 ml fractions were collected with continuous monitoring at 280 nm.

Reversed phase HPLC (RP-HPLC). Low molecular weight components eluting from the size exclusion column were further resolved by RP-HPLC on a Waters 510 binary system on a 1 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column. Water and acetonitrile containing 0.1%

-34-

trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) or 0.13% heptafluorobutyric acid (HFBA) were used for gradient elution. Purified peptides were lyophilized, dissolved in 0.01% acetic acid at 100 - 500 µg/ml, and stored at -70° C.

Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS; 14) and acid-urea
5 (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 155:270-274, 1986) gel electrophoresis were used to the estimate molecular mass and/or purity of protein preparations as previously described (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 45:150-154, 1984).

Amino acid analysis. The amino acid composition of each peptide was determined on
6 N HCl hydrolysates (2 h, 150° C) of native and performic acid-oxidized, or reduced
10 and alkylated samples (Bidlingmeyer, B.A., *et al.*, *J. Chromatogr.* 336:93-104, 1984). Tryptophan content was determined by sequence analysis and by spectroscopic measurement on a Beckman DU 60 spectrophotometer by the method of Edelhock (Edelhock, H., *Biochem.* 6:1948-1954).

Sequence Analysis. For sequence analysis, purified BGP-A was subjected to automated
15 Edman sequence analysis. Automated sequence analysis was performed on an Applied Biosystems 475A instrument configured with on-line PTH-amino acid analysis. The sequence was confirmed by comparing the primary structure with the amino acid composition, and cDNA cloning.

Peptide synthesis. BGP-A and BGP-A-amide were synthesized at the 0.4 mmol scale
20 on a Millipore 9050 automated synthesizer by standard Fmoc/BOP/HOBt/NMM activation with a 30 minute coupling time. The starting resin for the free acid peptide was Fmoc-L-Valine-PEG-PS (Millipore), and for peptide amide the starting resin was Fmoc-PAL-PEG-PS (Barany, G., *et al.*, *Intercept*, R. Epton, Andover, England, 1992, pp.29-38; Van Abel, R.J., *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Applicant respectfully requests withdrawal of the rejection.* 45:401-409, 1995). Side chain protecting groups were Pmc for arginine, trityl for glutamine and histidine, tBoc for lysine and tBu for tyrosine.
25 Fmoc deprotection was with 2% piperidine and 2% DBU for 15 minutes. Tryptophan

-35-

and isoleucine were double coupled. Following chain assembly the resin was cleaved and deprotected with reagent K (82.5% TFA, 5% phenol, 5% thioanisole, 5% water and 2.5% ethanedithiol) for 4 hours. The peptide solution was made 30% in acetic acid, extracted with dichloromethane, and the aqueous phase was lyophilized. Purification
5 was performed by RP-HPLC on a 22.5 x 250 mm preparative Vydak C-18 column using 0.1%TFA and a linear acetonitrile gradient developed at 0.33% per minute. The purified peptides were analyzed by amino acid analysis, acid-urea gel electrophoresis and analytical RP-HPLC.

cDNA isolation and characterization. BGP-A: Total RNA was isolated from bovine
10 bone marrow using the acid guanidinium thiocyanate-phenol extraction method of Chomczynski and Sacchi (Chomczynski, P., *et al.*, *Analyt. Biochem.* 162:156-159, 1987). Bone marrow total RNA (1 mg) was then used with avian reverse transcriptase to synthesize first strand cDNA according to the manufacturer's protocol (5'-RACE System; Life Technologies; Gaithersburg, MD). This cDNA was used as a template for
15 3'-RACE, in which a degenerate gene specific primer was paired with an oligo (dT)15-anchor primer to generate the 3'-end of the BGP-A cDNA. PCR amplification was carried out using the following cycling parameters: 95 °C, 1 minutes; 55 °C, 1 minutes; 72 °C, 1 minutes for 35 cycles. 5'-RACE was carried out in a similar fashion with the exception that first strand cDNA was tailed using terminal transferase and different gene
20 specific and anchor primers were used. PCR-amplified RACE products were subcloned and sequenced as described previously (Yount, N.Y., *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 155:4476-4484, 1995). Once the 5'- and 3'-ends of the BGP-A cDNA were known, a PCR product corresponding to the full length BGP-A sequence was generated and characterized by sequence analysis.

25 Murine bone marrow total RNA and first strand cDNA were generated as for BGP-A. Two gene specific primers were then used to PCR amplify a sequence corresponding to a BGP-A homolog. This sequence was subcloned and sequenced as described above.

-36-

Antimicrobial assay. *E. coli* ML35, *S. aureus* 502A, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans* were used as target organisms in a microbicidal suspension assay as previously described (Selsted, M.E., *Genetic Engineering: Principles and Methods*, J.K. Setlow, Plenum Press, New York, 1993, pp. 131-147).

5 EXAMPLE 1

PURIFICATION OF BGP-A

Previous electrophoretic analyses of the acid-soluble proteins of bovine PMN granules demonstrated that these preparations contain a complex mixture of proteins varying in size from 1,000 to 200,000 D (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 10 1992). Acetic acid extract of a granule-enriched fraction from 1.3×10^{10} neutrophils was chromatographed on a Bio-Gel P-60 column as described above in the section titled, "Materials and Methods." Approximately 2×10^{10} cell equivalents of acid solubilized granule protein was fractionated on a BioGel P-60 column and antibacterial activity in pooled eluent fractions was assayed as described in the "Materials and Methods."

15 Fractions corresponding to Peak E were lyophilized and subjected to further purification by RP-HPLC. Each peak (A-F in Fig. 1A) contained bactericidal activity against *S. aureus* and *E. coli*. Peak F was predominantly comprising indolicidin, a novel thirteen residue antibiotic peptide amide (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295), and Peak E contained at least 13 β -defensins.

20 Peak E fractions were combined and further purified by HPLC. One tenth of the pooled fractions from Peak E (Fig. 1a) was loaded on a 1 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column equilibrated in 0.1% TFA/water (solvent A) at a flow rate of 3.0 ml/min. A linear gradient of acetonitrile (20% to 45%) containing 0.1% TFA (solvent B) was applied at the rate of 0.33% per min. Fractions were collected using the peak cutting mode of a

25 Pharmacia Frac-200 fraction collector. The initial RP-HPLC purification of Peak E fractions yielded a complex chromatogram (Fig. 1B) in which most peaks contained two

-37-

or more peptides as determined by acid-urea PAGE. However, BGP-A was eluted as an isolated, virtually pure peak (indicated by the asterisk symbol "*" in Fig. 1B) early in the RP-HPLC chromatogram. Final purification (Fig. 2) was obtained by a second round of RP-HPLC.

5 **EXAMPLE 2**

AMINO ACID AND SEQUENCE ANALYSIS OF BGP-A

The composition of BGP-A was established by amino acid analysis (Figure 2). Approximately 5 µg of purified BGP-A was injected onto a 0.4 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column run at a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min. Solvents are the same as described above for
10 Figure 1B. Gradient conditions: 10% B to 50% B in 25 min. *B. Acid-urea gel of purified BGP-A.* A 2 µg sample of purified BGP-A was loaded onto a 12.5% acid-urea polyacrylamide gel that was electrophoresed for 4 hours at 250 V (lane 2). A 100 µg sample of crude acid extract from bovine neutrophil granules (lane 1) was run in parallel. Staining was with Coomassie Blue containing 15% formalin. Absorbance
15 scans of BGP-A were carried out between 300 and 200 nm, providing an accurate estimate of tyrosine and tryptophan content (Edelhoch, H., *Biochem.* 6:1948-1954, 1967). Automated sequence analysis was carried out on 2 nmol of BGP-A. Repetitive sequencing yields averaged ≥90 percent, allowing for unambiguous assignment of all thirteen residues. The complete amino acid sequence of BGP-A is:

20 Tyr-Lys-Ile-Ile-Gln-Gln-Trp-Pro-His-Tyr-Arg-Arg-Val (SEQ ID NO: 5; Fig. 6)

A protein sequence search using the BLAST algorithm (Altschul, S.F., *et al.*, *J. Molec. Biol.* 215:403-410, 1990) revealed no similar amino acid sequences among the GenBank Data base.

EXAMPLE 3

25 **SYNTHESIS OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE**

The two synthetic BGP-A forms were assembled as N^α-Fmoc protected amino acids. (The acid-urea gel patterns of the purified peptides are shown in Fig. 3.) A 12.5% acid-urea gel was loaded with 2-4 µg of natural BGP-A (Fig. 3, lane 1), synthetic BGP-A (Fig. 3, lane 2) or synthetic BGP-A-amide (Fig. 3, lane 3). Staining was as described

-38-

for Fig. 2. The yields of the HPLC-purified material were 31.4% for the free acid form, and 22.1% for the carboxamidated form.

EXAMPLE 4

ISOLATION AND SEQUENCING OF BGP-A cDNA CLONES

- 5 The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) and predicts a 21 kD precursor composed of 190 residues (Fig. 4; SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the BGP-A precursor, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide (Von Heijne, G., *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133:17-21, 1983). The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region containing 156 residues. The final 13
10 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 6).

- To determine if the BGP-A precursor was homologous to other nucleotide or protein sequences, a Blast search of the GenBank database was carried out. Some homology between the BGP-A sequence and a partial cDNA sequence isolated from murine
15 adenocarcinoma of unknown tissue origin was identified. Using consensus primers derived from the murine adenocarcinoma and BGP-A sequences, a cDNA encoding a BGP-A like sequence from mouse bone marrow (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5) was isolated. This full-length cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor comprising signal pro-peptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A
20 (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). Based on this similarity, this sequence isolated from murine bone marrow cDNA is designated as mouse granulocyte peptide A (MGP-A; Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5 and Fig. 6, SEQ ID NO: 7).

EXAMPLE 5**ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE.**

Natural and synthetic BGP-A and synthetic BGP-A-amide were tested for their microbicidal activities against *S. aureus* 502A, *E. coli* ML35, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans*. Using a microbicidal suspension assay (Selsted, M.E., *Genetic Engineering: Principles and Methods*, J.K. Setlow, Plenum Press, New York, 1993, pp.131-147), each peptide was tested against the four test organisms with peptide concentrations ranging from 5-100 µg/ml. The bactericidal and fungicidal activities of the three peptide preparations were assessed using a standard microbicidal assay. Organisms were grown to mid-log phase, harvested, and suspended to 2×10^7 CFU/ml. The incubation mixture contained $1-2 \times 10^6$ CFU/ml, 10 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.4, and peptide at concentrations up to 100 µg/ml. After 1 h of incubation at 37 C (4 h incubations for *C. neoformans*), serial 10-fold dilutions were plated on Trypticase Soy Agar (bacteria) or *S. abaroud* dextrose agar (fungi), and incubated for 24-48 h at 37 C. Killing was quantitated by colony counting, and plotted as a function of peptide concentration in the incubation.

The data, presented in Figure 7, reveal the dose-dependent activity of each peptide as measured by the reduction in colony forming units after a 1 or 4 hour incubation interval. These data demonstrate 1) that BGP-A was microbicidal against each organism; 2) that synthetic BGP-A and natural BGP-A were equal in potency, suggesting that the activity of the natural peptide was attributable to the purified compound and not to a contaminant; and 3) that the carboxamidated form of BGP-A is much more potent against most of the targets than is the free-carboxyl form.

The mature peptide was microbicidal *in vitro* against representative Gram positive and Gram negative bacteria, and yeast forms of two fungi. The antimicrobial activity of the natural peptide was validated by demonstration that synthetic BGP-A had equivalent killing activity.

-40-

EXAMPLE 6**ACTIVITY OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE TO TREAT AN LPS DISORDER**

The effect of the BGP, MGP, BGP-A and MGP-A peptides of the invention on LPS-induced TNF in macrophages can be determined by those in the art, according to standard methods. For example, macrophage cells are grown by seeding cells into a cell culture flask and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ for 1 week. Macrophage cell media [(Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium with Hepes buffer 450 ml; 2.4mM L-glutamine 3ml (400mM); Pen/Strep 3ml (10⁴U/ml of Pen, 1 mg/ml strep); and 10% heat inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS) 50ml)] is then completely removed from flasks.

10 10 mls of cell dissociation solution (Sigma) is added to each flask and incubated at 37°C for 10 minutes. Cells are removed from flasks, diluted in macrophage cell media and centrifuged for approximately six minutes. The cell pellet is resuspended in 5ml of media/ flask used. 100µl cell suspension is removed and added to 400µl of trypan blue and cells are counted using a hemocytometer. The cell suspension is diluted to 1 x 10⁶

15 cells / ml and 1 ml of suspension is added per well of a 24 well plate. The 24 well plates are incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ overnight.

After an overnight incubation, the media is aspirated from all the wells. 100µl of Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is added at 100ng/100µl. BGP-A and MGP-A is added at the desired concentration/100µl to specified wells. Macrophage cell media is added to a

20 final volume of 1 ml/well. The plates are incubated for six hours at 37°C, 5% CO₂. The supernatant is removed from the wells and stored overnight at 4°C. For those wells in which whole bacteria is added directly to the wells, the supernatant is centrifuged in 0.2µm filter eppendorf tubes for 5 minutes.

The supernatants are then used in cell cytotoxic L929 assay. The samples are

25 transferred to 96 well plates. 50µl of TNF media is added to all the wells in all the plates except to those wells in the first row. 10µl of murine TNF standard (20ng/ml) and 90µl of TNF media is added in duplicate to the plate and diluted 1:2 down the plate to the second to last row. Test samples (75µl), comprising the supernatants from the

-41-

macrophage cell assays, are added to separate rows in duplicate and diluted 1:3 to the second to last rows.

TNF-sensitive L929 mouse fibroblast cells are grown by seeding 10^6 cells into a 162cm² cell culture flask and left to grow for 1 week. L929 cells are removed from the flask with 10mls of trypsin-EDTA/flask and incubated 3-5 minutes. Cell suspension is diluted and centrifuged for 6 minutes. The pellet is resuspended in 5 mls of fresh L929 media/flask and counted (same as macrophage cells). Cell suspension is diluted to 10^6 cells/ml. 100 μ l is used to inoculate each well of the 96 well plates with the supernatants. (L929 Growth Media is the same as macrophage cell media except instead of FBS, 50 mls of 10% heat inactivated horse serum is utilized; TNF Assay Media is the same as macrophage cell media except 4 μ g/ml Actinomycin D is added.)

The plates are incubated at 37°C at 5% CO₂ for 2 days. The media is then aspirated and replaced with 100 μ l of the dye MTT (0.5mg/ml) in modified Eagle Medium without phenol red. The plates are then incubated at 37°C at 5% CO₂ for 3 hours. The dye is then removed and replaced with 100 μ l of absolute ethanol. The plates are left at room temperature for 10 - 15 minutes to dissolve the formazan dye crystals.

The plates are read at 570nm in a ELISA plate reader with 690nm reference filter. One unit of TNF activity is defined as the amount required to kill 50% of the L929 cells. The TNF level in Units per ml therefore is the reciprocal of the dilution which led to a 50% killing of L929 cells.

It is to be understood that, while the invention has been described with reference to the above detailed description, the foregoing description is intended to illustrate, but not to limit, the scope of the invention. Other aspects, advantages, and modifications of the invention are within the scope of the following claims. All publications, patent applications, patents, and other references mentioned herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-42-

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. An isolated antimicrobial peptide comprising an amino acid sequence YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), wherein X can be any amino acid.
- 5 2. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the amino acid sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 6.
3. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the amino acid sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 7.
4. The peptide of any of claims 1-3, wherein the peptide comprises at least
10 one modified amino acid.
5. The peptide of claim 4, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
6. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the peptide exhibits antimicrobial
15 activity against microorganisms selected from the group consisting of gram positive bacteria, gram negative bacteria, fungi and viruses.
7. The peptide of claim 6, wherein the organism is selected from the group consisting of: *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *C. albicans*, *S. typhimurium*, and *C. neoformans*.
8. An isolated antimicrobial polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as
20 set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3 or functional fragments thereof.

-43-

9. An isolated antimicrobial polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO: 5 or functional fragments thereof.
10. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 1 or functional fragments thereof.
- 5 11. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 6 or functional fragments thereof.
12. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 7 or functional fragments thereof.
13. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID
10 NO: 3 or functional fragments thereof.
14. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO: 5 or functional fragments thereof.

-44-

15. The polynucleotide of claims 13 or 14, wherein such sequence is characterized by:
- a) nucleotide sequences which hybridize under stringent conditions with the polynucleotide of claim 13 or 14;
 - b) nucleotide sequences which encode peptides with conservative variations from the amino acid sequences encoded by the DNA of claim 13 or 14;
 - c) the nucleotide sequence of claim 13 or 14, wherein T is U;
 - d) functional fragments of a), b), or c) which encode peptides which retain the biological activity of BGP-A, or MGP-A; and
 - e) degenerate nucleotide sequences encoding the amino acid sequence as encoded by any of a), b), c) or d).
16. An antibody that binds to SEQ ID NO: 1.
17. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody is monoclonal.
18. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody is polyclonal.
19. A method of microbicidal or microbistatic inhibition in an environment capable of sustaining microbial growth comprising administering to the environment a microbicidal or microbistatical effective amount of a peptide having an amino acid sequence of YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), wherein X can be any amino acid.

-45-

20. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 6.
21. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 7.
- 5 22. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3, or functional fragments thereof.
23. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 5, or functional fragments thereof.
24. The method of claim 19, further comprising at least one additional
10 antimicrobial composition.
25. The method of claim 24, wherein the antimicrobial composition is selected from the group consisting of an antibiotic, an antifungal, and an antiviral agent.
26. The method of claim 25, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from
15 a class of antibiotic agents selected from the group consisting of aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, quinolones, tetracyclines, glycopeptides, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.
27. The method of claim 26, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from the
20 group consisting of amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/gluceptate/lactobionate/stearate, penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin,

-46-

- azlocillin, piperacillin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, imipenem, aztreonam, fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, cinoxacin, doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline, vancomycin, and teicoplanin.
- 5
28. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide comprises at least one modified amino acid.
- 10 29. The method of claim 28, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
30. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide is an effective microbicidal or microbistatic agent against microorganisms selected from the group consisting of gram positive bacteria, gram negative bacteria, fungi and viruses.
- 15
31. The peptide of claim 30, wherein the organism is selected from the group consisting of: *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *C. albicans*, *S. typhimurium*, and *C. neoformans*.
32. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is an organism.
- 20 33. The method of claim 32, wherein the environment is an animal.
34. The method of claim 32, wherein the environment is a human.
35. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is a food or food product.

-47-

36. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is a water supply.
37. A method of inhibiting a lipopolysaccharide (LPS) associated disorder in a subject having, or at risk of having, such a disorder, comprising administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a peptide having an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of: SEQ ID NO: 1; SEQ ID NO: 3, SEQ ID NO: 5, SEQ ID NO: 6 and SEQ ID NO: 7 or functional fragments thereof.
38. The method of claim 37, further comprising at least one additional antimicrobial composition.
39. The method of claim 38, wherein the antimicrobial composition is selected from the group consisting of an antibiotic, an antifungal, and an antiviral agent.
40. The method of claim 39, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from a class of antibiotic agents selected from the group consisting of aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, quinolones, tetracyclines, glycopeptides, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.

-48-

41. The method of claim 40, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from the group consisting of amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucaptate/lactobionate/stearate, penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin, azlocillin, piperacillin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, imipenem, aztreonam, fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, cinoxacin, doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline, vancomycin, and teicoplanin.
42. The method of claim 37, wherein the peptide comprises at least one modified amino acid.
43. The method of claim 42, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
44. A method of inhibiting protozoan growth comprising contacting a protozoan with an inhibitory effective amount of a peptide selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO: 1, 6 and 7.

1/5

FIG. 1A

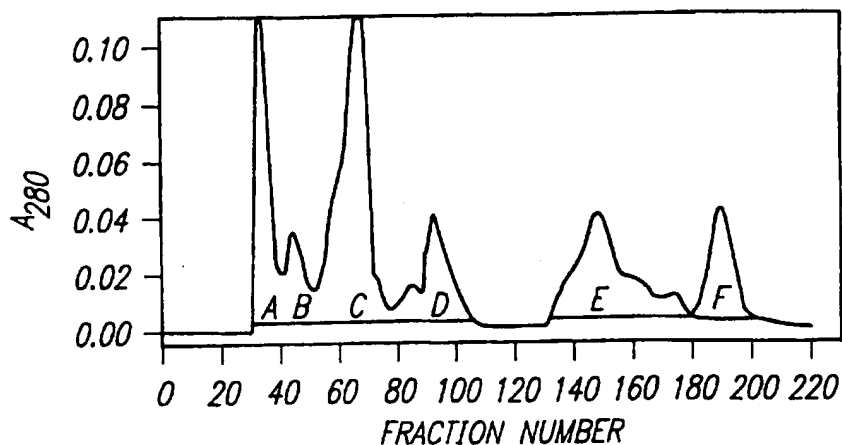


FIG. 1B

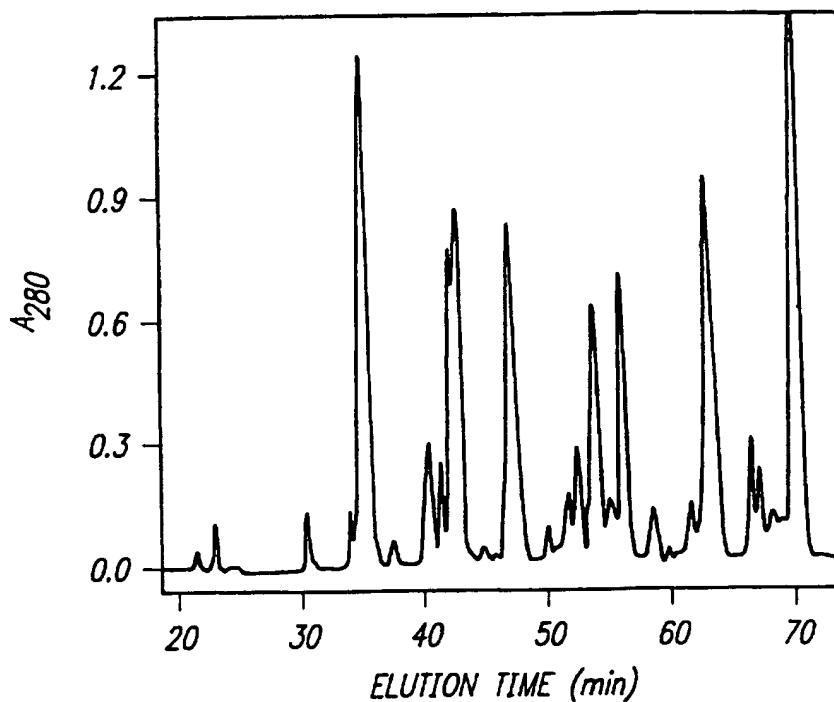


FIG. 6

BNP-A
MNP-A



13

12

FIG. 2A

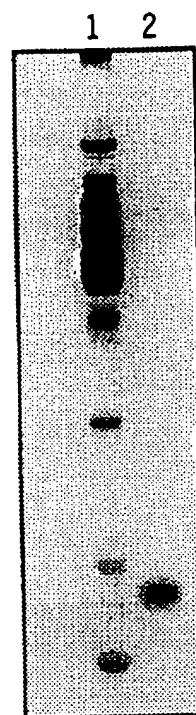
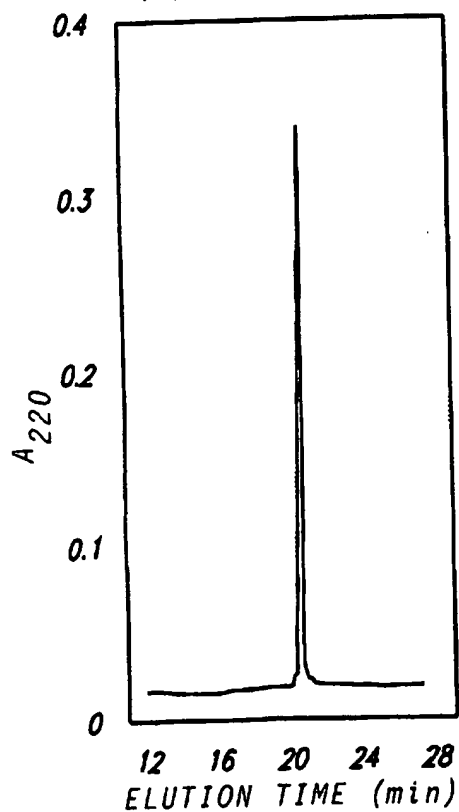
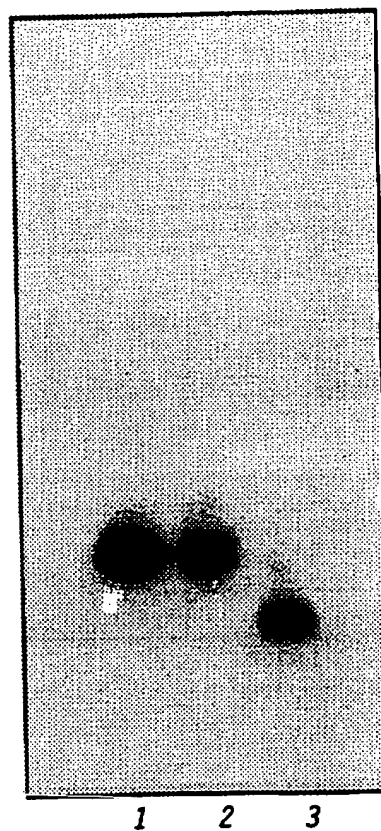


FIG. 2B

FIG. 3



3/5

AGTCTCCGCGTGTCTTTCTGCCTGCCATGTCTCGCCGCTACACACCGC	50
M S R R Y T P	
TCGCCTGGGTCTCCTCGCCCTCCTGGGCCTCGGGGCGGCTCAAGACTGC	100
L A W V L L A L L G L G A A Q D C	
GGCAGCATCGTGTCCCGCGGAAAGTGGGGCGCCCTGGCATCCAAGTGCAG	150
G S I V S R G K W G A L A S K C S	
CCAGAGGCTAAGACAGCCTGTGCGCTACGTGGTGGTGTGCGACACGGCGG	200
Q R L R Q P V R Y V V V S H T A	
GCAGCGTCTGCAACACTCCGGCCTCGTGCCAGAGGCAGGCCCAAAACGTG	250
G S V C N T P A S C Q R Q A Q N V	
CAGTACTACCACGTGCGGGAGCGGGCTGGTGCACGTGGGCTACAATTT	300
Q Y Y H V R E R G W C D V G Y N F	
CCTGATCGGAGAAGATGGGCTCGTGTATGAGGGCCGGGGCTGGAACACCT	350
L I G E D G L V Y E G R G W N T	
TAGGTGCTCACTCTGGGCCCACGTGGAACCCCATAGCCATCGGCATCTCC	400
L G A H S G P T W N P I A I G I S	
TTCATGGGCAACTACATGCATCGGGTGCCCCGGCCTCTGCTCTCAGGGC	450
F M G N Y M H R V P P A S A L R A	
GGCCCAGAGTCTGCTGGCTTGTGGCGCAGCTCGGGGATACCTGACTCCTA	500
A Q S L L A C G A A R G Y L T P	
ACTACGAAGTCAAAGGACACCGCGATGTGCAGCAGACGCTCTCTCCAGGG	550
N Y E V K G H R D V Q Q T L S P G	
GACGAGCTCTATAAAATCATCCAGCAGTGGCCGCACTACCGCCGCGTGTG	600
D E L <u>Y K I I Q Q W P H Y R R V</u>	
AGGGCCTGTCCGTCTTCTCACACCCCACCCATCCCATCAGAAACCCACC	650
GCCTTCCCCTGCCCCAATAAAGGCGAAGCTTAAACTGT	688

FIG. 4

4/5

ATACACAGCCCTGCGTCCTGTGCGGCACGTCCAGCATGTTGTTTGCCTGT 50
M L F A C

GCTCTCCTTGCCCTCCTGGGTCTGGCAACCTCCTGCAGTTTCATCGTGCC 100
A L L A L L G L A T S C S F I V P

CCGCAGTGAGTGGAGGGCCCTGCCATCCGAGTGCTCTAGCCGCCTGGGGC 150
R S E W R A L P S E C S S R L G

ACCCAGTTCGCTACGTGGTGATCTCACACACAGCCGGCAGCTTCTGCAAC 200
H P V R Y V V I S H T A G S F C N

AGCCCGGACTCCTGTGAACAGCAGGCCCGCAATGTGCAGCATTACCACAA 250
S P D S C E Q Q A R N V Q H Y H K

GAATGAGCTGGGCTGGTGCGATGTAGCCTACAACCTCCTTATTGGAGAGG 300
N E L G W C D V A Y N F L I G E

ACGGTCATGTCTATGAAGGCCGAGGCTGGAACATCAAGGGTGACCACACA 350
D G H V Y E G R G W N I K G D H T

GGGCCCATCTGGAATCCCATGTCTATTGGCATCACCTTCATGGGGAACTT 400
G P I W N P M S I G I T F M G N F

CATGGACCGGGTACGCAAAGCGGCCCTCCGTGCTGCCCTAAATCTTCTG 450
M D R V R K A A L R A A L N L L

GAATCTGGGGTGTCTCGGGGCTTCCTGAGATCCAACCTATGAAGTCAAAGG 500
E S G V S R G F L R S N Y E V K G

ACACCGGGATGTGCAAAGCACTCTCTCTCCAGGTGACCAACTCTATCAGG 550
H R D V Q S T L S P G D Q L Y Q

TCATCCAAAGCTGCGAACAACCTACCGAGAGTGAGAGACCTTGAGACCTAGT 600
V I Q S W E H Y R E

GAGAATCCCCCCCCCAGCCCGAAATCCCTCCTGCCACCTGCTTCTTCC 650

CATTGACCCCCAATAAAGACTCAGCACC 678

FIG. 5

FIG. 7-1

5/5

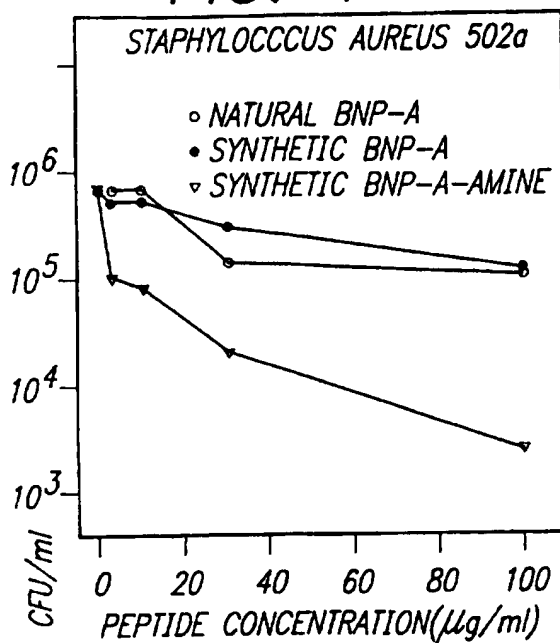


FIG. 7-2

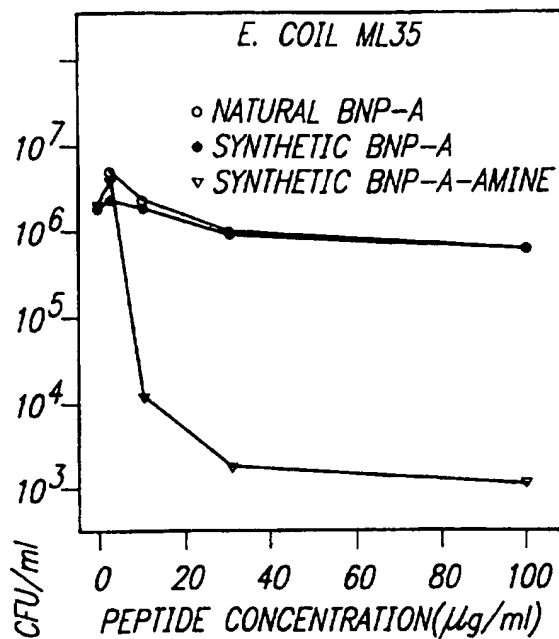


FIG. 7-3

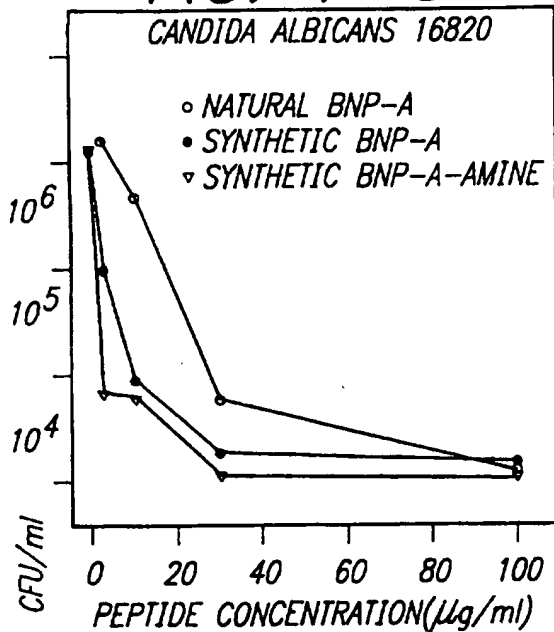
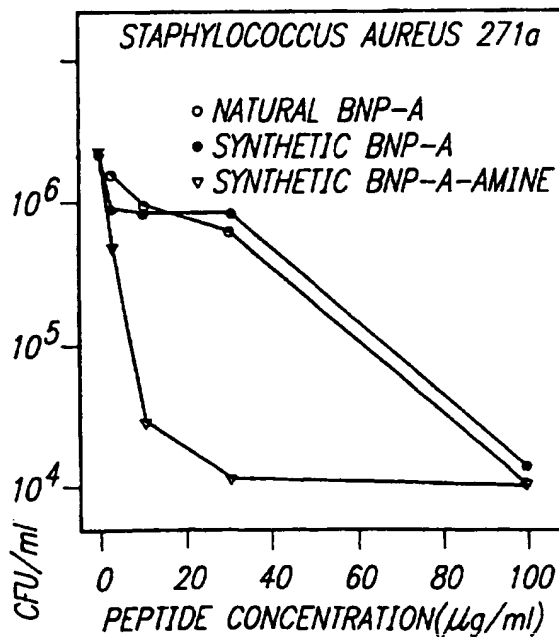


FIG. 7-4



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/02218

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : A61K 38/00, 38/04, 39/12; C07K 5/00, 7/00, 16/00, 17/00
US CL : 424/185.1; 514/14, 15; 530/327, 388.24, 389.2; 536/23.5
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/185.1; 514/14, 15; 530/327, 388.24, 389.2; 536/23.5

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, MEDLINE, EMBASE, LIFESCI, REGISTRY, BIOSIS, WPID

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 5,459,235 A (SELSTED ET AL.) 17 October 1995, see entire document.	1-44
Y	DIAMOND et al. Airway epithelial cells are the site of expression of a mammalian antimicrobial peptide gene. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. May 1993, Vol. 90, pages 4596-4600, see entire document.	1-44
Y	SELSTED et al. Defensins in granules of phagocytic and non-phagocytic cells. Trends in Cell Biology. March 1995, Vol. 5, pages 114-119, see entire document.	1-44

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	*X*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
E earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*G*	document member of the same patent family
O document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

07 APRIL 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report

15 APR 1997

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

PATRICK NOLAN

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/02218

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	ZANETTI et al. The cDNA of the Neutrophil Antibiotic Bac5 Predicts a Pro-sequence Homologous to a Cysteine Proteinase Inhibitor That Is Common to Other Neutrophil Antibiotics. J. of Biol. Chem. 05 January 1993, Vol. 268, No. 1, pages 522-526, see entire document.	1-44

PCTWORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶: A61K 38/00, 38/04, 39/12, C07K 5/00, 7/00, 16/00, 17/00	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/29765
		(43) International Publication Date: 21 August 1997 (21.08.97)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/02218 (22) International Filing Date: 13 February 1997 (13.02.97) (30) Priority Data: 60/011,834 16 February 1996 (16.02.96) US (71) Applicant: THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA [US/US]; 22nd floor, 300 Lakeside Drive, Oakland, CA 94612-3550 (US). (72) Inventor: SELSTED, Michael, E.; 16 Young Court, Irvine, CA 92715 (US). (74) Agent: BERLINER, Robert; Robbins, Berliner & Carson, 5th floor, 201 N. Figueroa Street, Los Angeles, CA 90012-2628 (US).		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i>
(54) Title: ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND METHODS OF USE (57) Abstract Novel antimicrobial peptides from bovine and murine neutrophils are provided. The peptides, designated bovine granulocyte peptide A (BGP-A) and murine granulocyte peptide A (MGP-A) were purified to homogeneity from peripheral blood granulocytes. The amino acid and nucleotide sequence of BGP-A and MGP-A are also provided. A synthetic version of BGP-A and MGP-A is also provided. The purified BGP-A peptide is shown to have antimicrobial activity indistinguishable from that of natural BGP-A. Synthetic carboxamidated analogs of BGP-A (BGP-A-amide) and MGP-A (MGP-A-amide) are also provided.		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND METHODS OF USE

This invention was made with Government support under Grant No. AI22931 awarded by the National Institutes of Health. The Government has certain rights in this invention.

5 1. *Field of the Invention*

This invention relates generally to antimicrobial peptides, and, more specifically, to peptides designated bovine granulocyte peptide -A (BGP-A), bovine granulocyte peptide -A-amide (BGP-A-amide), murine granulocyte peptide -A(MGP-A) and murine granulocyte peptide -A-amide (MGP-A-amide) and methods of uses thereof.

10 2. *Background of the Invention*

The cytoplasmic granules of polymorphonuclear leukocytes (neutrophils, granulocytes, PMNs) contain antimicrobial peptides that allow these cells to inactivate ingested microbial targets by mechanisms considered "oxygen independent" (Lehrer, R. I., *et al.*, *Blood* 76:2169-2181, 1990). These granule proteins constitute an antimicrobi-
15 al arsenal that includes defensins (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Trends in Cell Biology* 5:114-119, 1995), β -defensins (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993), indolicidin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 1992), and other broad spectrum antibiotic peptides that are released into the phagosome during phagolysosome fusion. To date, members of the defensin family have been isolated from neutrophils
20 of human (Ganz, T., *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.* 76:1427-1435, 1985), rabbit (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 260:4579-4584, 1985), rat (Eisenhauer, P., *et al.*, *Immun.* 58:3899-3902, 1990), and guinea pig origin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 55:2281-2286, 1987), and most recently from the Paneth cells of mouse small intestine (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 118:929-936, 1992). β -defensins have been isolated from the large
25 granules of bovine neutrophils (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993), bovine tracheal epithelium (Diamond, G.M., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:3952-3956, 1991), and human plasma (Bensch, K. W., *et al.*, *FEBS Lett.* 368:331-

-2-

335), and indolicidin is a component of the large granules of bovine PMN (Van Abel, R.J., *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein* 45:401-409, 1995).

The unique features of ruminant granulocytes were first described by Gennaro and Baggiolini and coworkers (Baggiolini, M., *et al.*, *Lab. Invest.* 52:151-158, 1985; 5 Gennaro, R., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 96:1651-1661, 1983) who demonstrated that neutrophils of cattle, goats, sheep, and ibex are endowed with many unusually large cytoplasmic granules that are distinct from the classical azurophil and specific granules. Subsequent studies established that most of the antibacterial peptides of bovine neutrophils are contained in these unique organelles. Romeo and Gennaro have demonstrated that the 10 large granules of bovine neutrophils contain potent microbicidal peptides that are structurally distinct from defensins (Gennaro, R., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 57:3142-3146, 1989; Romeo, D., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263:9573-9575, 1988). These include three arginine-rich peptides, termed bactenecins, which efficiently kill several gram positive and gram negative bacteria *in vitro*. Recently, the isolation and characterization of a 15 novel tridecapeptide amide, indolicidin, from bovine neutrophils was reported (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 1992). This cationic peptide was shown to be unusually rich in tryptophan, and to have potent bactericidal activity against *E. coli* and *S. aureus*. More recently the isolation of 13 β -defensins from bovine neutrophils demonstrated that these peptides are covalently dissimilar to defensins, while possessing 20 a similar folded conformation (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993).

-3-

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides peptides useful as antimicrobial agents. The invention arose from the discovery of a novel tridecapeptide from bovine peripheral blood granulocytes. The purified peptides and their carboxamide analogs have potent
5 antibacterial, antiviral, antiprotozoal, and antifungal activities. These peptides, designated BGP-A and MGP-A, are effective compounds for use in human and/or veterinary medicine, or as agents in agricultural, food science, or industrial applications for example.

The details of the preferred embodiment of the present invention are set forth in the
10 accompanying drawings and the description below. Once the details of the invention are known, numerous additional innovations and changes will become obvious to one skilled in the art.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figure 1 shows chromatographs of the purification of BGP-A. Figure 1a shows the gel filtration chromatography of bovine neutrophil granule extract. Figure 1b shows the reversed phase HPLC of the peak E fractions.

5

Figure 2 shows the analysis of purified BGP-A. Figure 2a shows the analytical RP-HPLC. Figure 2b shows the acid-urea gel of purified BGP-A.

Figure 3 shows the acid-urea PAGE of purified BGP-A and BGP-A-amide.

Figure 4 shows the cDNA nucleotide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 2) and the deduced precursor amino acid peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 3) of BGP-A.

10 Figure 5 shows the cDNA nucleotide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 4) and the deduced precursor amino acid peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 5) of MGP-A.

Figure 6 shows the mature BGP-A (SEQ ID NO: 6) and MGP-A (SEQ ID NO: 7) amino acid sequences. Hatched area indicates identical amino acids conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A. The consensus peptide amino acid sequence is identified as SEQ
15 ID NO: 1.

Figure 7 shows the microbicidal activities of natural and synthetic BGP-A and synthetic BGP-A-amide.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Before the present nucleic and amino acid sequences, compositions, reagents and methods and uses thereof are described, it is to be understood that this invention is not limited to the particular compositions, reagents, sequences and methodologies described
5 herein as such compositions, reagents, sequences and methodologies may vary. It is also to be understood that the terminology used herein is for the purpose of describing particular embodiments only, and that the terminology used herein is not intended to limit the scope of the present invention which will be limited only by the appended claims.

10 It must be noted that as used herein and in the appended claims, the singular forms "a," "an," and "the," include plural referents unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to "a reagent" includes one or more of such different reagents, reference to "an antibody" includes one or more of such different antibodies,
15 and reference to "the method" includes reference to equivalent steps and methods known to those of ordinary skill in the art that could be modified or substituted for the methods described herein.

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which the invention applies. Although any methods, compositions, reagents, sequences similar or
20 equivalent to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the invention, the preferred methods and materials are described herein. All publications mentioned herein are incorporated herein, including all figures, graphs, equations, illustrations, and drawings, to describe and disclose specific information for which the reference was cited in connection with.

25 The publications discussed above are provided solely for their disclosure before the filing date of the present application. Nothing herein is to be construed as an admission that the invention is not entitled to antedate such disclosure by virtue of prior invention.

-6-

Throughout this description, the preferred embodiment and examples shown should be considered as exemplars, rather than as limitations on the present invention.

During the purification of bovine granulocyte β -defensins, antimicrobial activity associated with a small peptide was detected that was different from any previously characterized. Presented herein is the purification, sequencing, synthesis, cDNA isolation, and antimicrobial properties of BGP-A, a thirteen-residue peptide antibiotic expressed in bovine granulocytes. The cDNA for a mouse homolog of BGP-A, isolated from mouse bone marrow and designated MGP-A, is also presented. The deduced MGP-A precursor was remarkably similar to that of BGP-A. The present invention also teaches the synthesis and antimicrobial properties of BGP-A-amide and MGP-A-amide which are analogs of BGP-A and MGP-A respectively.

The invention provides peptide molecules, designated bovine granulocyte peptide -A (BGP-A) and mouse granulocyte peptide -A (MGP-A) and their synthetic carboxamides, designated BGP-A-amide and MGP-A-amide; which exhibit a broad range of antimicrobial and antiprotozoal activity and consequently, are effective antimicrobial agents. Polynucleotides encoding BGP-A and MGP-A represent a new class of antimicrobial peptide genes. As demonstrated by the high conservation of the precursor structure in a ruminant and a rodent, this gene family appears to be remarkably conserved. In a manner similar to the generating of indolicidin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Peptides: Chemistry and Biology*, ESCOM J.A. Smith and J.E. Rivier, 1992, pp. 905-907), the peptide is synthesized as a much larger prepropeptide and subsequently packaged in granules as the mature product of proteolytic processing. The methods used for the isolation and purification of BGP-A and MGP-A peptides are similar to those previously used for defensin-like peptides; such methods are taught in U.S. Patent Serial Nos. 4,453,252, 4,659,692, 4,705,777 and 5,242,902, all of which are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

As used herein, the term "antimicrobial activity" refers to the ability of a compound to inhibit or irreversibly prevent the growth of a microorganism. Such inhibition or

-7-

prevention can be through a microbicidal action or microbistatic inhibition. Therefore, the term "microbicidal inhibition" or "inhibition of microbial growth" as used herein refers to the ability of the antimicrobial peptide to kill, or irrevocably damage the target organism. The term "microbistatic inhibition" as used herein refers to the growth of the target organism without death. Microbicidal or microbistatic inhibition can be applied to an environment either presently exhibiting microbial growth (i.e., therapeutic treatment) or an environment at risk of sustaining or supporting such growth (i.e., prevention or prophylaxis).

As used herein, the term "environment capable of sustaining or supporting microbial growth" refers to a fluid, tissue, space, organ, surface substance or organism where microbial growth can occur or where microbes can exist. Such environments can be, for example, animal tissue; skin or bodily fluids, water and other liquids, food, food products or food extracts, surfaces, crops and certain inanimate objects. It is not necessary that the environment promote the growth of the microbe, only that it permits its subsistence.

The antimicrobial, or antibacterial, activity of BGP-A or MGP-A can be measured against various pathogens by one of ordinary skill in the art. Microorganisms are grown to appropriate concentration, mixed with an appropriate medium, such as an agarose trypticase soy medium, and contacted with BGP-A or MGP-A. After appropriate incubation, the antimicrobial activity is apparent from clear zones surrounding the antibacterial samples. The clear zones are dependent upon the concentration of the peptide. Further methods of determination of antimicrobial activity are taught in Example 5 and in the section entitled "Materials and Methods" herein and are commonly known by those in the art.

Additionally, the minimum inhibitory concentrations (MIC) of BGP-A or MGP-A to effect antimicrobial activity can be determined for a number of different microorganisms according to standard techniques. Briefly, cells are grown overnight at about 37°C in appropriate bacterial media and diluted in the same medium to give

-8-

concentrations of about 10^4 to 10^5 CFU/ml. The broth dilutions are set up in a 96 well microtiter plate, for example, mixing combinations of serially diluted microbes and peptides. After additions of serially diluted bacteria, or other microbes with serially diluted peptide concentrations, the plates are incubated overnight at about 37°C. The next day the plates are scored for the presence or absence of microbial growth in the wells, and the MIC is determined from the scoring.

As used herein, the term's BGP-A, BGP-A-amide, MGP-A and MGP-A-amide refer to peptides or peptidomimetics having generally about 8 to 20 amino acids which make up a chain having a net positive charge. In other words, these are cationic peptides. The peptides of the invention preferably have one or more aromatic amino acids. Illustrative peptide sequences are provided in Figs. 4-6 and as set forth in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7.

The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) with a predicted 21 kD precursor protein composed of 190 residues (SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the precursor peptide, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide. The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region containing 156 residues. The final 13 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence, YKIIQQWPHYRRV (SEQ ID NO: 6).

The full length MGP-A cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor peptide (SEQ ID NO: 4) comprising signal pro-peptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A (Fig. 5). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine MGP-A cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (YQVIQSWEHYRE) (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). A consensus sequence between the mature BGP and MGP peptides is set forth in Fig. 6 where the hatched area indicates identical amino acids that are conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A and in SEQ ID NO: 1 having an amino acid sequence of YXXIQXWXHYR, where X can be any amino acid. The peptides of the present invention include the SEQ ID NO: 1 consensus sequence. While not wanting to be bound by a particular theory, it is believed that the

C-terminus should contain a net positive charge so that the molecule remains active. For example, SEQ ID NO: 1, 6 and 7 all end with an arginine (R) residue, SEQ ID NO: 6 ends with an arginine (R) and valine (V), and SEQ ID NO: 7 ends with a glutamic acid (E) residue. Given that the invention provides both the consensus sequence
5 between mouse and bovine species and the individual DNA sequences encoding the peptides of the present invention, it would not require undue experimentation by the ordinary artisan to isolate homologous BGP/MGP sequences from other species, including human, porcine, ovine, etc., using the teachings supplied herein and methods common in the art (see Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold
10 Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference).

It should be appreciated that various modifications can be made to the BGP-A or MGP-A amino acid sequences without diminishing the antimicrobial activity of the peptides. It is intended that peptides or peptidomimetics of BGP-A or MGP-A exhibiting such
15 modifications, including amino acid additions, deletions or substitutions are within the scope of the invention. As used herein, the term "substantially the same sequence" refers to a peptide sequence either identical to, or having considerable homology with, for example, the sequences BGP-A or MGP-A as shown in Figs. 4, 5, and 6 and in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7. It is understood that limited modifications can be made to
20 the peptide which result in enhanced function. Likewise, it is also understood that limited modifications can be made without destroying the biological function of the peptide and that only part of the entire primary structure may be required to affect activity. For example, minor modifications of these sequences that do not completely destroy the activity also fall within this definition and within the definition of the
25 compound claimed as such. Modifications can include, for example, additions, deletions, or substitutions of amino acid residues, substitutions with compounds that mimic amino acid structure or function as well as the addition of chemical moieties such as amino and acetyl groups. The modifications can be deliberate or can be accidental such as through mutation in hosts that produce BGP-A or MGP-A peptides exhibiting

-10-

antimicrobial activity. All these modifications are included as long as the peptide retains its antimicrobial activity.

In some cases, it may be desirable to incorporate one or more non-natural amino acids in the synthetic peptides of the present invention. Possible non-natural amino acids will usually have at least an N-terminus and a C-terminus and will have side chains that are either identical to or chemically modified or substituted from a natural amino acid counter part. An example of a non-natural amino acid is an optical isomer of a naturally-occurring L-amino acid. All peptides were synthesized using L amino acids, however, all D forms of the peptides can be synthetically produced. In addition, C-terminal derivatives can be produced, such as C-terminal methyl esters, to increase the antimicrobial activity of a peptide of the invention. Numerous modifications are contemplated according to this invention. Besides the obvious approach of replacement of specific residues in the natural sequence, an alternative embodiment involves synthesis of the peptide from D-amino acids thus reducing potential inactivation by proteases. Such means are well known in the art. (See, for example, Wade *et al.*, *PNAS, USA* 87:4761-4765, 1990.) Examples of chemical modification or substitutions may include hydroxylation or fluorination of C-H bonds within natural amino acids. Such techniques are used in the manufacture of drug analogs of biological compounds and are known to those of ordinary skill in the art. In a preferred embodiment the modification of the peptides of the invention comprises modification by a carboxy terminal amide. Those of skill in the art can make similar substitutions to achieve peptides with greater antimicrobial activity and a broader host range. For example, the invention includes the peptides as set forth in SEQ ID NO:1, 3, 5, 6 and 7, as well as analogues, derivatives or functional fragments thereof, as long as the antimicrobial activity of the peptide remains. Minor modifications of the primary amino acid sequence of the peptides of the invention may result in peptides which have substantially equivalent antimicrobial activity as compared to the specific peptides as set forth in the SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7 described herein. Such modifications may be deliberate, as by site-directed mutagenesis, or may be spontaneous. All of the peptides produced by these modifications are included herein as long as the antimicrobial biological

-11-

activity of the original peptide still exists. BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the present invention also include functional fragments of the peptide or functional fragments of the nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide, as long as the activity of BGP-A or MGP-A remains. Smaller peptides containing the biological activity of BGP-A or MGP-A are also included in the invention as are smaller nucleic acid sequences encoding for all or a functional fragment of the peptide. The relative effectiveness of the functional fragments of the peptide or nucleic acid sequences encoding for functional fragments of the peptides of the invention can be readily determined by one of skill in the art by establishing the sensitivity of a microorganism to the peptide fragment. The effectiveness of the peptide functional fragments is assessed by measuring the potential microbicidal or microbistatic activity of the fragment or nucleic acid sequence encoding such a fragment as measured relative to the microbicidal ability of the BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of SEQ ID NO: 6 or 7 respectively. Testing is carried out as described in the section titled "Antimicrobial Assay" in the Materials and Methods section herein and in Example 5 of the present invention or by other standard antimicrobial tests (e.g., MIC) commonly known to those in the art.

Further, deletion of one or more amino acids can also result in a modification of the structure of the resultant peptide without significantly altering its biological activity. This can lead to the development of a smaller active peptide which would also have utility. For example, amino or carboxy terminal amino acids which may not be required for biological activity of the particular peptide can be removed. Peptides of the invention include any analog, homolog, mutant, isomer or derivative of the peptides disclosed in the present invention, so long as the bioactivity as described herein is remains. The methods and compositions of the present invention may also employ synthetic non-peptide compositions that have biological activity functionally comparable to that of BGP-A, MGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, or MGP-A-Amide. By "functionally comparable," it is meant that the shape, size, flexibility, and electronic configuration of the non-peptide molecule are such that the biological activity of the molecule is similar to the BGP-A, MGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, or MGP-A-Amide peptides. In particular, the non-peptide molecules should display comparable antimicrobial activity. Such non-

-12-

peptide molecules can be small molecules having a molecular weight in the range of about 100 to 1000 Daltons. The use of such small molecules is advantageous in the preparation of pharmacological compositions.

The identification of such non-peptide analog molecules can be performed using techniques known in the art of drug design. Such techniques include, but are not limited to, self-consistent field (SCF) analysis, configuration interaction (CI) analysis, and normal mode dynamics computer analysis, all of which are well described in the scientific literature. See, e.g., Rein et al., *Computer-Assisted Modeling of Receptor-Ligand Interactions*, Alan Liss, N.Y., (1989). Preparation of the identified compounds will depend on the desired characteristics of the compounds will involve standard chemical synthetic techniques. See, Cary et al., *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, part B, Plenum Press, New York (1983).

The term "conservative variation" as used herein denotes the replacement of an amino acid residue by another, biologically similar residue. Examples of conservative variations include the substitution of one hydrophobic residue such as isoleucine, valine, leucine or methionine for another, or the substitution of one polar residue for another, such as the substitution of arginine for lysine, glutamic for aspartic acid, or glutamine for asparagine, and the like. The term "conservative variation" also includes the use of a substituted amino acid in place of an unsubstituted parent amino acid provided that antibodies raised to the substituted peptide also immunoreact with the unsubstituted peptide.

The BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the present invention can be synthesized by methods well known in the art, such as through the use of automatic peptide synthesizers, by recombinant methods or well-known manual methods of peptide synthesis. In addition, they can be purified from natural sources such as white blood cells and from bone marrow of a vertebrate, preferably of mammalian origin. Such cells or tissues can be obtained by means well known to those skilled in the art.

-13-

The term "substantially pure" as used herein refers to BGP-A or MGP-A nucleic acid or protein which is substantially free of other proteins, lipids, carbohydrates or other materials with which it is naturally associated or that the peptide or protein so designated has been separated from its *in vivo* cellular environment. Because of the separation and purification, the substantially pure peptides and proteins are useful in ways that the non-separated impure peptides or proteins are not. One skilled in the art can purify BGP-A or MGP-A using standard techniques for protein purification. The substantially pure peptide will yield a single major band on an acid-urea gel. The purity of the BGP-A or MGP-A peptide can also be determined by amino-terminal amino acid sequence analysis and analytical RP-HPLC.

The invention also provides polynucleotides encoding the BGP-A or MGP-A protein. These polynucleotides include DNA, cDNA and RNA sequences which encode BGP-A or MGP-A. It is understood that all polynucleotides encoding all or a portion of BGP-A or MGP-A are also included herein, as long as they encode a peptide with BGP-A or MGP-A activity. Such polynucleotides include naturally occurring, synthetic, and intentionally manipulated polynucleotides. For example, BGP-A or MGP-A polynucleotide may be subjected to site-directed mutagenesis. The polynucleotides of the invention include sequences that are degenerate as a result of the genetic code. There are 20 natural amino acids, most of which are specified by more than one codon. Therefore, all degenerate nucleotide sequences are included in the invention as long as the amino acid sequence of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide encoded by the nucleotide sequence is functionally unchanged. The polynucleotide encoding BGP-A or MGP-A includes the nucleotide sequence in FIGURE 4 and 5 (SEQ ID NOs: 2 and 4), as well as complementary nucleic acid sequences. A complementary sequence may include an antisense nucleotide. When the sequence is RNA, the deoxynucleotides A, G, C, and T of SEQ ID Nos: 2 and 4 are replaced by ribonucleotides A, G, C, and U, respectively. Also included in the invention are fragments of the above-described nucleic acid sequences that are at least 15 bases in length, which is sufficient to permit the fragment to selectively hybridize to DNA (SEQ ID NOs: 2 and 4) that encodes the protein of FIGURE 4 and 5 (SEQ ID NOs: 3 and 5), under physiological conditions.

-14-

Also, provided by this invention are the nucleic acid sequences encoding the BGP-A or MGP-A peptides, vectors and host cells containing them and methods of expression to provide recombinantly produced peptides. This method comprises growing the host cell containing a nucleic acid encoding a peptide under suitable conditions such that the
5 nucleic acid is transmitted and/or translated and isolating the peptide so produced.

After the peptide of this invention is isolated, nucleic acids encoding the peptides are isolated by methods well known in the art, *infra*. These isolated nucleic acids can be ligated into vectors and introduced into suitable host cells for expression. Methods of ligation and expression of nucleic acids within cells are well known in the art, (see
10 Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference).

Specifically disclosed herein is a cDNA sequence containing the active portion of the BGP-A or MGP-A coding sequence. One of skill in the art could now use this sequence
15 to isolate other full length clones. The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) and predicts a 21 kD precursor composed of 190 residues (Fig. 4; SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the BGP-A precursor, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide (Von Heijne, G., *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133:17-21, 1983). The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region
20 containing 156 residues. The final 13 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 6). The full-length MGP-A cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor comprising signal propeptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5). Based on this similarity, this sequence isolated from murine bone marrow cDNA is designated
25 as murine neutrophil peptide A (MGP-A; Fig. 5; SEQ ID NOS: 5 and 7). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). The hatched area in Figure 6 indicates identical amino acids conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A. The consensus peptide amino acid sequence is YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), where X can be any amino acid.

DNA sequences of the invention can be obtained by several methods. For example, the DNA can be isolated using hybridization techniques which are well known in the art. These include, but are not limited to: 1) hybridization of genomic or cDNA libraries with probes to detect homologous nucleotide sequences, 2) polymerase chain reaction (PCR) on genomic DNA or cDNA using primers capable of annealing to the DNA sequence of interest, and 3) antibody screening of expression libraries to detect cloned DNA fragments with shared structural features. The sequences of a pair of nucleic acid molecules (or two regions within a single nucleic acid molecule) are said to be "complementary" to each other if base pairing interactions can occur between each nucleotide of one of the members of the pair and each nucleotide of the other member of the pair. A pair of nucleic acid molecules (or two regions within a single nucleic acid molecule) are said to "hybridize" to each other if they form a duplex by base pairing interactions between them. As known in the art, hybridization between nucleic acid pairs does not require complete complementarity between the hybridizing regions, but only that there is a sufficient level of base pairing to maintain the duplex under the hybridization conditions used.

Hybridization reactions are typically carried out under low to moderate stringency conditions, in which specific and some nonspecific interactions can occur. After hybridization, washing can be carried out under moderate or high stringency conditions to eliminate nonspecific binding. As known in the art, optimal washing conditions can be determined empirically, *e.g.*, by gradually increasing the stringency. Condition parameters that can be changed to affect stringency include, *e.g.*, temperature and salt concentration. In general, the lower the salt concentration and the higher the temperature, the higher the stringency. For example, washing can be initiated at a low temperature (*e.g.*, room temperature) using a solution containing an equivalent or lower salt concentration as the hybridization solution. Subsequent washing can be carried out using progressively warmer solutions having the same salt solution. Alternatively, the salt concentration can be lowered and the temperature maintained in the washing step, or the salt concentration can be lowered and the temperature increased. Additional

-16-

parameters can be altered to affect stringency, including, *e.g.*, the use of a destabilizing agent, such as formamide.

In nucleic acid hybridization reactions, the conditions used to achieve a particular level of stringency will vary, depending on the nature of the nucleic acids being hybridized.

5 For example, the length, degree of complementarity, nucleotide sequence composition (*e.g.*, GC v. AT content), and nucleic acid type (*e.g.*, RNA v. DNA) of the hybridizing regions of the nucleic acids can be considered in selecting hybridization conditions. An additional consideration is whether one of the nucleic acids is immobilized, for example, on a filter.

10 An example of progressively higher stringency conditions is as follows: 2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about room temperature (hybridization conditions); 0.2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about room temperature (low stringency conditions); 0.2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about 42°C (moderate stringency conditions); and 0.1 x SSC at about 68°C (high stringency conditions). Washing can be carried out using only one of these conditions, *e.g.*, high
15 stringency conditions, or each of the conditions can be used, *e.g.*, for 10-15 minutes each, in the order listed above, repeating any or all of the steps listed. However, as mentioned above, optimal conditions will vary, depending on the particular hybridization reaction involved, and can be determined empirically.

Preferably the BGP-A or MGP-A polynucleotide of the invention is derived from a
20 mammalian organism, and most preferably from a mouse, cow, or human. Screening procedures which rely on nucleic acid hybridization make it possible to isolate any gene sequence from any organism, provided the appropriate probe is available. Oligonucleotide probes, which correspond to a part of the sequence encoding the protein in question, can be synthesized chemically. This requires that short, oligopeptide
25 stretches of amino acid sequence must be known. The DNA sequence encoding the protein can be deduced from the genetic code, however, the degeneracy of the code must be taken into account. It is possible to perform a mixed addition reaction when the sequence is degenerate. This includes a heterogeneous mixture of denatured double-

-17-

stranded DNA. For such screening, hybridization is preferably performed on either single-stranded DNA or denatured double-stranded DNA. Hybridization is particularly useful in the detection of cDNA clones derived from sources where an extremely low amount of mRNA sequence relating to the peptide of interest is present. In other words, by using stringent hybridization conditions directed to avoid nonspecific binding, it is possible, for example, to allow the autoradiographic visualization of a specific cDNA clone by the hybridization of the target DNA to that single probe in the mixture which is its complete complement (Wallace, *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid Res.*, 9:879, 1981).

Therefore, given a partial DNA sequence of the BGP-A or MGP-A gene of interest, one of skill in the art would be able to prepare probes for isolation of a full length cDNA clone, without undue experimentation (see for example, Ausubel, *et al.*, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Units 6.3-6.4, Greene Publ., 1994; Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratories, current edition).

The compliment of specific DNA sequences encoding BGP-A or MGP-A can also be obtained by: 1) isolation of double-stranded DNA sequences from the genomic DNA; 2) chemical manufacture of a DNA sequence to provide the necessary codons for the peptide of interest; and 3) *in vitro* synthesis of a double-stranded DNA sequence by reverse transcription of mRNA isolated from a eukaryotic donor cell. In the latter case, a double-stranded DNA complement of mRNA is eventually formed which is generally referred to as cDNA. Of the three above-noted methods for developing specific DNA sequences for use in recombinant procedures, the isolation of genomic DNA isolates is the least common. This is especially true when it is desirable to obtain the microbial expression of mammalian peptides due to the presence of introns.

The synthesis of DNA sequences is frequently the method of choice when the entire sequence of amino acid residues of the desired peptide product is known. When the entire sequence of amino acid residues of the desired peptide is not known, the direct synthesis of DNA sequences is not possible and the method of choice is the synthesis of cDNA sequences. Among the standard procedures for isolating cDNA sequences of

-18-

- interest is the formation of plasmid- or phage-carrying cDNA libraries which are derived from reverse transcription of mRNA which is abundant in donor cells that have a high level of genetic expression. When used in combination with polymerase chain reaction technology, even rare expression products can be cloned. In those cases where
- 5 significant portions of the amino acid sequence of the peptide are known, the production of labeled single or double-stranded DNA or RNA probe sequences duplicating a sequence putatively present in the target cDNA may be employed in DNA/DNA hybridization procedures which are carried out on cloned copies of the cDNA which have been denatured into a single-stranded form (Jay, *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid*, 11:2325, 1983).
- 10 Several types of vectors are available and can be used to practice this invention, e.g., plasmid, DNA and RNA viral vectors, baculoviral vectors, and vectors for use in yeast. When the vector is a plasmid, it generally contains a variety of components including promoters, signal sequences, phenotypic selection genes, origins of replication sites, and other necessary components as are known to those of skill in the art.
- 15 Promoters most commonly used in prokaryotic vectors include the lac Z promoter system, the alkaline phosphatase pho A promoter, the bacteriophage λ PL promoter (a temperature sensitive promoter), the tac promoter (a hybrid trp-lac promoter regulated by the lag repressor), the tryptophan promoter, and the bacteriophage T7 promoter.
- One other useful component of vectors used to practice this invention is a signal
- 20 sequence. This sequence is typically found immediately 5' to the nucleic acid encoding the peptide, and will thus be transcribed at the amino terminus of the fusion protein. However, in certain cases, the signal sequence has been demonstrated to be at positions other than 5' to the gene encoding the protein to be secreted. This sequence targets the protein to which it is attached across the inner membrane of the bacterial cell. The
- 25 DNA encoding the signal sequence can be obtained as a restriction endonuclease fragment from any nucleic acid encoding a peptide that has a signal sequence. Suitable prokaryotic signal sequences can be obtained from genes encoding, for example Lamb or OmpF (Wong, *et al.*, *Gene* 68:193, 1983), MalE, PhoA, OmpA and other genes. A

-19-

preferred prokaryotic signal sequence for practicing this invention is the *E. coli* heat-stable enterotoxin II (STII) signal sequence as described by Chang, *et al*, *Gene* 55:189, 1987.

Another useful component of the vectors used to practice this invention is a phenotypic selection gene. Typical phenotypic selection genes are those encoding proteins that confer antibiotic resistance upon the host cell. By way of illustration, the ampicillin resistance gene (amp) and the tetracycline resistance gene (tet) are readily employed for this purpose.

Construction of suitable vectors comprising the aforementioned components as well as the gene encoding the desired peptide are prepared using standard recombinant DNA procedures. Isolated DNA fragments to be combined to form the vector are cleaved, tailored, and ligated together in a specific order and orientation to generate the desired vector.

The DNA is prepared according to standard procedures (see Maniatis, *et al*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference). If the DNA fragment is to be ligated into a vector, the vector is at first linearized by cutting with the appropriate restriction endonucleases. The linearized vector can then be treated with alkaline phosphatase or calf intestinal phosphatase. The phosphatasing prevents self-ligation of the vector during the ligation step.

After ligation, the vector with the heterologous gene now inserted is transformed into a suitable host cell. Suitable prokaryotic host cells include *E. coli* strain JM101, *E. coli* K12 strain 294 (ATCC number 31,446), *E. coli* strain W3110 (ATCC number 27,325), *E. coli* X1776 (ATCC number 31, 537), *E. coli* XL-1Blue (Stratagene), and *E. coli* B; however, many other strains of *E. coli*, such as HB101, NM522, NM538, NM539 and many other species and genera of prokaryotes can be used as well. Besides the *E. coli* strains listed above, bacilli such as *Bacillus subtilis*, other enterobacteriaceae such as

-20-

Salmonella typhimurium or *Serratia marcesans* and various *Pseudomonas* species can all be used as hosts.

Transformation of prokaryotic cells is readily accomplished using calcium chloride or other methods well known to those skilled in the art. Electroporation (Neumann, *et al.*,
5 *EMBO J.* 1:841, 1982) also can be used to transform these cells. The transformed cells are selected by growth on an antibiotic, commonly tetracycline (tet) or ampicillin (amp), to which they are rendered resistant due to the presence of tet and/or amp resistance genes on the vector.

After selection of the transformed cells, these cells are grown in culture and the plasmid
10 DNA (or other vector with the foreign gene inserted) is then isolated. Plasmid DNA can be isolated using methods known in the art. This purified plasmid DNA is then analyzed by restriction mapping and/or DNA sequencing.

Following procedures outlined above, mammalian cell lines such as myeloma (P3-653), hybridoma (SP2/0), Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO), Green monkey kidney (COSI) and
15 murine fibroblasts (L492) are suitable host cells for peptide expression. These "mammalian" vectors can include a promoter, an enhancer, a polyadenylation signal, signal sequences and genes encoding selectable markers such as geneticin (neomycin resistance), mycophenolic acid (xanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase) or histidinol (histidinol dehydrogenase).

20 Suitable promoters for use in mammalian host cells include, but are not limited to, Ig Kappa, Ig Gamma, Cytomegalovirus (CMV) immediate early, Rous Sarcoma Virus (RSV), Simian virus 40 (SV40) early, mouse mammary tumor (MMTV) virus and metallothionein. Suitable enhancers include, but are not limited to, Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy, CMV early and SV40. Suitable polyadenylation sequences include Ig Kappa, Ig Gamma
25 or SV40 large T antigen. Suitable signal sequences include Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy and human growth hormone (HGH).

-21-

When the vector is baculovirus, suitable promoters and enhancer sequences include, but are not limited to, AcMGPV polyhedrin, AcMGPV ETL and AcMGPV p10 sequences. One particularly suitable polyadenylation signal is the polyhedrin AcMGPV. Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy and AcMGPV are examples of suitable signal sequences. These vectors are
5 useful in the following insect cell lines, among others: SF9, SF21 and High 5.

Alternatively, the peptides can be expressed in yeast strains such as PS23-6A, W301-18A, LL20, D234-3, INVSC1, INVSC2, YJJ337. Promoter and enhancer sequences such as gal 1 and pEFT-1 are useful. Vra-4 also provides a suitable enhancer sequence. Sequences useful as functional "origins of replication" include ars1 and 2 μ circular
10 plasmid.

The invention includes antibodies that are immunoreactive with BGP-A or MGP-A peptides or fragments thereof. Antibodies which consist essentially of pooled monoclonal antibodies with different epitopic specificities, as well as distinct monoclonal antibody preparations are provided. Monoclonal antibodies are made from antigen
15 containing fragments of the protein by methods well known to those skilled in the art (Kohler, *et al.*, *Nature*, 256:495, 1975). Anti-BGP-A or MGP-A antibodies can be made by methods conventional in the art. For example, polyclonal antiserum can be raised in appropriate animals, such as rabbits, mice, or rats. BGP-A or MGP-A peptides, either synthetically obtained or naturally obtained, can be used to immunize the animal. The
20 immunogen can then be used to immunize animals by means well known to those skilled in the art. Serum samples are collected until the anti-BGP-A or MGP-A titer is appropriate. Various fractions of the antisera, such as IgG, can be isolated by means well known in the art. Alternatively, BGP-A or MGP-A immunogens can be used to obtain monoclonal antibodies, again by means well known in the art. (*See*, for example,
25 Harlow *et al.*, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Springs Harbor Laboratory, 1988.)

Anti-BGP-A or MGP-A antibodies can be used to detect the presence of BGP-A or MGP-A in biological samples, such as histological samples. An appropriate detectable

-22-

second antibody can be used to identify the primary antibody attached to the BGP-A or MGP-A by visualization. Means of detection include the use of radioactive nucleotides or enzyme substrates such as peroxidase. For example, anti-BGP-A was produced by standard methods and shown to stain bone marrow preparations from cattle (cytological sample). In particular, granulocytes (e.g., eosinophils) were stained heavily for BNP-A.

The term "antibody" as used in this invention includes intact molecules as well as fragments thereof, such as Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, and Fv that can bind the epitopic determinant. These antibody fragments retain some ability selectively to bind with its antigen or receptor and are defined as follows:

- 10 (1) Fab, the fragment that contains a monovalent antigen-binding fragment of an antibody molecule can be produced by digestion of whole antibody with the enzyme papain to yield an intact light chain and part of one heavy chain;
- (2) Fab', the fragment of an antibody molecule can be obtained by treating whole antibody with pepsin, followed by reduction, to yield an intact light chain and
15 part of the heavy chain; two Fab' fragments are obtained per antibody molecule;
- (3) (Fab')₂, the fragment of the antibody that can be obtained by treating whole antibody with the enzyme pepsin without subsequent reduction; F(ab')₂ is a dimer of two Fab' fragments held together by two disulfide bonds;
- (4) Fv, defined as a genetically engineered fragment containing the variable region
20 of the light chain and the variable region of the heavy chain expressed as two chains; and

-23-

(5) Single chain antibody ("SCA"), defined as a genetically engineered molecule containing the variable region of the light chain, the variable region of the heavy chain, linked by a suitable peptide linker as a genetically fused single chain molecule.

- 5 Methods of making these fragments are known in the art. (See for example, Harlow and Lane, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, New York (current edition), incorporated herein by reference).

As used in this invention, the term "epitope" means any antigenic determinant on an antigen to which the paratope of an antibody binds. Epitopic determinants usually
10 consist of chemically active surface groupings of molecules such as amino acids or sugar side chains and usually have specific three dimensional structural characteristics, as well as specific charge characteristics.

If needed, polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies can be further purified, for example, by binding to and elution from a matrix to which the peptide or a peptide to which the
15 antibodies are raised is bound. Those of skill in the art will know of various techniques common in the immunology arts for purification and/or concentration of polyclonal antibodies, as well as monoclonal antibodies (See, e.g., Coligan, *et al.*, Unit 9, *Current Protocols in Immunology*, Wiley Interscience, current edition, incorporated by reference).

20 It is also possible to use the anti-idiotypic technology to produce monoclonal antibodies that mimic an epitope. For example, an anti-idiotypic monoclonal antibody made to a first monoclonal antibody will have a binding domain in the hypervariable region that is the "image" of the epitope bound by the first monoclonal antibody.

The phrase "purified antibody" means an antibody that is at least 60%, by weight, free
25 from proteins and naturally-occurring organic molecules with which it is naturally associated. Preferably, the preparation is at least 75%, more preferably 90%, and most

-24-

preferably at least 99%, by weight, an antibody, *e.g.*, an anti-BGP-A specific antibody. A purified antibody may be obtained, for example, by affinity chromatography using recombinantly-produced protein or conserved motif peptides and standard techniques. The invention can employ not only intact monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies, but also
5 an immunologically-active antibody fragment, such as a Fab, Fab' or (Fab')₂ fragments, or a genetically engineered Fv fragment (Ladner *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 4,946,788).

"Specifically binds" means an antibody that recognizes and binds a specified protein, *e.g.*, an anti-BGP-A, specific antibody or anti-MGP-A specific antibody, which does not substantially recognize and bind other molecules in a sample which naturally includes
10 protein.

It should be understood that the compositions of the present invention have activity against many microorganisms, such as fungi, bacteria (both gram positive and negative), and protozoa and viruses. Different compositions will have differing degrees of activities toward different organisms. The peptides of the present invention may also
15 be combined with other proteins to act as preservatives to protect the proteins against bacterial degradation. Alternatively, the subject peptides or compositions may be used as preservatives and disinfectants in many formulations, such as contact lens solutions, ointments, shampoos, medicaments, foods, and the like. The amount of peptide employed in the compositions may vary depending upon the nature of the other
20 components, how much protection is required and the intended use of the composition.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides administration of a therapeutic amount of an antimicrobial peptide of the invention. One or more of the peptides disclosed herein, may have utility as antifungal agents, either alone, or as lipid fascicle preparations. The latter approach has been used with success with the non-
25 peptide antifungal drug amphotericin. Specific applications would be dependent on the pathogen targeted. For example, *C. albicans*, the common cause of mucocutaneous fungal disease in AIDS patients, which is extremely susceptible to several β -defensins, might be controlled in these individuals more effectively by a BGP-A or MGP-A based

therapeutic or in combination with existing first line drugs. Similarly, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used therapeutically in veterinary medicine. One advantage of the therapeutic use of the present invention is that the peptides exhibit low immunogenicity.

5 BGP-A or MGP-A, either purified from natural sources or synthetic, can be administered to a subject in need of therapy by various means, including oral administration, preferably in a slow-release type formulation that will avoid release within the stomach. Alternatively, they can be administered through a nasal gastric incubation or transabdominal catheter. Individual species of BGP-A or MGP-A can be administered singly or a combination can be administered simultaneously or sequentially
10 and also with other antimicrobial compositions.

The invention further provides a pharmaceutical composition for treating a human bacterial or fungal infection that comprises the purified peptide of the invention in an amount effective to treat a human bacterial or fungal infection and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 The method of inhibiting the growth of bacteria may further include the addition of antibiotics for combination or synergistic therapy. The appropriate antibiotic administered will typically depend on the susceptibility of the bacteria such as whether the bacteria is gram negative or gram positive, and will be easily discernable by one of skill in the art. Examples of particular classes of antibiotics useful for synergistic
20 therapy with the peptides of the invention include aminoglycosides (*e.g.*, tobramycin), penicillins (*e.g.*, piperacillin), cephalosporins (*e.g.*, ceftazidime), fluoroquinolones (*e.g.*, ciprofloxacin), carbapenems (*e.g.*, imipenem), tetracyclines and macrolides (*e.g.*, erythromycin and clarithromycin). The method of inhibiting the growth of bacteria may further include the addition of antibiotics for combination or synergistic therapy. The
25 appropriate antibiotic administered will typically depend on the susceptibility of the bacteria such as whether the bacteria is gram negative or gram positive, and will be easily discernable by one of skill in the art. Further to the antibiotics listed above, typical antibiotics include aminoglycosides (amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin,

-26-

netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucetate/lactobionate/stearate), beta-lactams such as penicillins (e.g., penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin, azlocillin and
5 piperacillin), or cephalosporins (e.g., cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, and cefsulodin). Other classes of antibiotics include carbapenems (e.g., imipenem), monobactams (e.g., aztreonam), quinolones (e.g., fleroxacin, nalidixic acid,
10 norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin and cinoxacin), tetracyclines (e.g., doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline), and glycopeptides (e.g., vancomycin, teicoplanin), for example. Other antibiotics include chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the treatment of the soluble proteins comprises
15 size exclusion chromatography, ion-exchange chromatography, or reverse phase, high performance, liquid chromatography. It will be appreciated by one skilled in the art, however, that treatment of soluble proteins to purify peptides may be accomplished by many methods known to those skilled in the art, all of which are contemplated by this invention. Further, in one embodiment of the invention, the treatment of granulocytes
20 to recover granules comprises density gradient centrifugation.

The invention also provides a composition that comprises the purified peptide in an amount effective to kill bacteria or fungi and a suitable carrier. Such composition may be used in numerous ways to combat bacteria or fungi, for example, in household or laboratory antimicrobial formulations using carriers well known in the art.

25 The compositions of the present invention can comprise the BGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, MGP-A, or MGP-A-Amide, either singly or in combination, incorporated in a physiologically-acceptable-carrier suitable for topical application. The compositions may contain from about 10 ug/ml to 2000 ug/ml, preferably 50 ug/ml to 500 ug/ml. The

-27-

nature of the carrier will vary depending on the intended area of application. For application to the skin, a cream or an ointment base is usually preferred with suitable bases including lanolin, Silvadene™ (Marion; particularly for the treatment of burns) Aquaphor™ (Duke Laboratories, South Norwalk, Conn.), and the like. It will also be possible to incorporate the BGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, MGP-A, or MGP-A-Amide peptides in natural and synthetic bandages and other wound dressings to provide for continuous exposure of a wound to the peptides. Aerosol applicators may also find use with the present invention.

Where the peptides are to be used as antimicrobial agents, they can be formulated in buffered aqueous media containing a variety of salts and buffers. The salts will for the most parts are alkali and alkaline earth halides, phosphates and sulfates, e.g., sodium chloride, potassium chloride or sodium sulfate. Various buffers may be used, such as citrate, phosphate, HEPES, Tris or the like to the extent that such buffers are physiologically acceptable to the host that is being treated.

Various excipients or other additives may be used, where the compounds are formulated as lyophilized powders, for subsequent use in solution. The excipients may include various polyols, inert powders or other extenders.

Depending on the nature of the formulation and the host, the subject compounds may be administered in a variety of ways. The formulations may be applied topically, by injection, e.g., intravenously, intraperitoneal, nasopharyngeal, etc.

In another aspect of the invention, compositions comprising the purified peptide of the invention in a microbicidal effective amount and a suitable carrier or pharmaceutical composition, or pharmaceutically acceptable carrier may additionally comprise a detergent. The addition of a detergent to such peptide compositions is useful to enhance the antibacterial, antiviral, or antifungal characteristics of the novel peptide of the invention. Although any suitable detergent may be used, the presently preferred detergent is a nonionic detergent, such as Tween 20 or 1% NP40.

-28-

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical formulation or composition for treating a human microbial, bacterial, viral, or fungal infection that comprises the purified peptide of the invention or a gene delivery and gene expression vector that can deliver an effective amount of peptide in an amount effective to treat a human microbial
5 bacterial, viral, or fungal infection incorporated into a pharmaceutically acceptable liposome or other delivery vehicle.

"Formulation" means a composition capable of gene delivery and gene expression, which can deliver a nucleotide sequence to, or directly into, a target cell whereupon the formulation containing the nucleotide sequence is incorporated on the cytoplasmic side
10 of the outermost membrane of the target cell and capable of achieving gene expression so that detectable levels of gene expression of the delivered nucleotide sequence are expressed in the target cell. More preferably, after delivery into the cytoplasmic side of the cell membrane the composition is subsequently transported, without undergoing endosomal or lytic degradation, into the nucleus of the target cell in a functional state
15 capable of achieving gene expression so that detectable levels of gene expression of the delivered nucleotide sequence are expressed in the target cell. Expression levels of the gene or nucleotide sequence inside the target cell can provide gene expression for a duration of time and in an amount such that the nucleotide product therein can provide a biologically beneficially effective amount of a gene product or in such an amount as
20 to provide a functionally beneficial biological effect. As used herein, the term formulation can refer to, but is not limited by (either explicitly or implicitly) the following examples: (1) liposome or liposome reagents or liposomal compositions either cationic, anionic or neutral in net character and net charge; (2) DNA, nucleic acid or a nucleic acid expression vector ionically complexed with a polycation/s and a ligand/s
25 such that after attachment of the [DNA + Polycation + Ligand] composition to a cell surface receptor on a target cell via the ligand, the [DNA + Polycation + Ligand] composition can be endocytosed into the target cell and the DNA is subsequently decoupled from the ligand and polycation and delivered to the cell nucleus in a functional condition for subsequent expression. Various alterations in the composition
30 can be envisioned by those of ordinary skill in the art such as including peptide

-29-

sequences that (a) protect the composition from endosomal lysis after incorporation into the target cell by allowing the composition to leave the lysosomal vesicle, or (b) which act as a nuclear targeting agent, chaperoning the nucleic acid through the pores of the nuclear envelope and into the nucleus of the cell. Similar reagents, which have been previously described, are the asialoglycoprotein-polylysine conjugations (Wu *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263:14621, 1988; Wu *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 264:16985, 1989); (3) naked nucleic acid; (4) compacted nucleic acid or a compacted reagent; or (5) plasmid or naked DNA that can be microinjected (Wolff *et al.*, *Science* 247:1465, 1990); (6) nucleic acid in a viral or retroviral vector composition; and (7) colloidal dispersions (Felgner *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7413, 1987; Ono *et al.*, *Neuroscience Lett.* 117:259, 1990; Brigham *et al.*, *Am. J. Med. Sci.* 298:278, 1989; Staubinger and Papahadjopoulos, *Meth. Enz.* 101:512, 1983). One of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that other compositions for the delivery of nucleotide sequences to target cells may be envisioned.

It will be readily understood by those skilled in the art that any suitable pharmaceutically acceptable liposome may be used as a vehicle for the peptide of the present invention. Such liposomal compositions have activity against many microorganisms similar to the activity of other compositions of this invention discussed in more detail above. Additionally, these compositions may be administered in a variety of conventional and well-known ways as is also discussed in greater detail above.

"Therapeutically effective" as used herein, refers to an amount of formulation, composition, or reagent in a pharmaceutical acceptable carrier that is of sufficient quantity to ameliorate the state of the patient or animal so treated. "Ameliorate" refers to a lessening of the detrimental effect of the disease state or disorder in the recipient of the therapy. The subject of the invention is preferably a human, however, it can be envisioned that any animal can be treated in the method of the instant invention. The term "modulate" means enhance, inhibit, alter, or modify the expression or function of antimicrobial activity in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

-30-

Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier preparations for administration include sterile or aqueous or non-aqueous solutions, suspensions, and emulsions. Examples of non-aqueous solvents are propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, vegetable oils such as olive oil, and injectable organic esters such as ethyl oleate. Aqueous carriers include water, 5 alcoholic/aqueous solutions, emulsions or suspensions, including saline and buffered media. Parenteral vehicles include sodium chloride solution, Ringer's dextrose, dextrose and sodium chloride, lactated Ringer's, or fixed oils. The active therapeutic ingredient is often mixed with excipients that are pharmaceutically acceptable and compatible with the active ingredient. Suitable excipients include water, saline, dextrose, glycerol and 10 ethanol, or combinations thereof. Intravenous vehicles include fluid and nutrient replenishers, electrolyte replenishers, such as those based on Ringer's dextrose, and the like. Preservatives and other additives may also be present such as, for example, antimicrobial, antioxidants, chelating agents, and inert gases and the like.

Another therapeutic approach included within the invention involves direct 15 administration of reagents or compositions by any conventional administration techniques (for example but not restricted to local injection, inhalation, or administered systemically), to the subject with a microbial, bacterial, viral or fungal disorder. The reagent, formulation or composition may also be targeted to specific cells or receptors by any of the methods described herein. The actual dosage of reagent, formulation or 20 composition that modulates a microbial, bacterial, viral or fungal disorder depends on many factors, including the size and health of an organism, however one of ordinary skill in the art can use the following teachings describing the methods and techniques for determining clinical dosages (Spilker B., *Guide to Clinical Studies and Developing Protocols*, Raven Press Books, Ltd., New York, 1984, pp. 7-13, 54-60; 25 Spilker B., *Guide to Clinical Trials*, Raven Press, Ltd., New York, 1991, pp. 93-101; Craig C., and R. Stitzel, eds., *Modern Pharmacology*, 2d ed., Little, Brown and Co., Boston, 1986, pp. 127-33; T. Speight, ed., *Avery's Drug Treatment: Principles and Practice of Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 3d ed., Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, 1987, pp. 50-56; R. Tallarida, R. Raffa and P. McGonigle, *Principles in* 30 *General Pharmacology*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1988, pp. 18-20) to determine the

appropriate dosage to use; but, generally, in the range of about 0.1 mg/kg to 1000 mg/kg, more specifically between about 1.0 mg/kg and 500 mg/kg, and preferably from about 10 mg/kg and 100 mg/kg inclusive final concentration are administered per day to an adult in any pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier.

5 The peptides of the present invention can also be used to treat an LPS associated disorder. With reference to an LPS associated disorder, the term "therapeutically effective amount" as used herein for treatment of an LPS associated disorder such as endotoxemia or sepsis refers to the amount of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide sufficient to decrease the subject's response to LPS and decrease the symptoms of an LPS associated
10 disorder, such as sepsis. The term "therapeutically effective" therefore includes that the amount of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide sufficient to prevent, and preferably reduce by at least 50%, and more preferably sufficient to reduce by 90%, a clinically significant increase in the plasma level of LPS. The dosage ranges for the administration of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide are those large enough to produce the desired effect. Generally,
15 the dosage will vary with the age, condition, sex, and extent of the infection with bacteria or other agent as described above, in the patient and can be determined by one skilled in the art. The dosage can be adjusted by the individual physician in the event of any contraindications. In any event, the effectiveness of treatment can be determined by monitoring the level of LPS or LPS associated molecules, such as tumor necrosis
20 factor (TNF), in a patient. A decrease in serum LPS and TNF levels correlates positively with amelioration of the LPS associated disorder.

In a further embodiment, the present invention may be used as a food preservative or in treating food products to eliminate potential pathogens. The latter use might be targeted to the fish and poultry industries that have serious problems with enteric
25 pathogens which cause severe human disease. In another embodiment, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used as disinfectants, for use in any product that must remain microbial free. In a further embodiment, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used as antimicrobials for food crops, either as agents to reduce post harvest spoilage, or expressed transgenically to enhance host resistance. Because of the antibiotic, antimicrobial, and antiviral properties
30 of the peptides, they may also be used as preservatives or sterillants of materials

-32-

- susceptible to microbial or viral contamination. The BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the invention can be utilized as broad spectrum antimicrobial agents directed toward various specific applications. Such applications include use of the peptides as preservatives in processed foods (organisms including Salmonella, Yersinia, Shigella), either alone or in combination with antibacterial food additives such as lysozymes; as a topical agent (Pseudomonas, Streptococcus) and to kill odor producing microbes (Micrococci). The relative effectiveness of the peptides of the invention for the applications described can be readily determined by one of skill in the art by determining the sensitivity of any organism to one of the peptides.
- 10 It is also possible to incorporate the peptides on devices or immaterial objects where microbial growth is undesirable as a method of microbicidal inhibition or microbistatic inhibition of microbial growth in an environment capable of sustaining microbial growth by administering to the devices or immaterial objects a microbicidal or microbistatical effective amount of peptide. Such devices or immaterial objects include, but are not limited to, linens, cloth, plastics, implantable devices (e.g., heart pacemakers, surgical stents), surfaces or storage containers. Coating may be achieved by nonspecific absorption or covalent attachment.
- 15

EXAMPLES

- The following examples are intended to illustrate but not admitted to limit the invention in any manner, shape, or form (either explicitly or implicitly), nor should they be so construed. While they are typical of those that might be used, other procedures, methodologies, or techniques known to those skilled in the art may be used alternatively.
- 20

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Bovine neutrophils. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMN) were purified from 1 L batches of fresh citrated bovine blood. Following sedimentation at 40 minutes at 700 x g and 37° C, the erythrocyte column was subjected to 7 seconds of hypotonic lysis, after which isotonicity was restored using 3x phosphate buffered saline. The leukocyte-rich suspension was then sedimented at 120 x g (4° C, 15 minutes). Residual erythrocytes were lysed by repeating this procedure 1 or 2 times. Aliquots were removed for quantitation by hemocytometry and differential counts. Preparations obtained by this procedure contained an average of 4×10^9 cells per L of whole blood of which $97 \pm 3\%$ were neutrophils. Preparations were treated with 2 mM diisopropylfluorophosphate (DFP). Neutrophil preparations were then cooled to 4° C for 20 minutes and disrupted by nitrogen cavitation in a Parr bomb (Borregaard, N., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 8 97:52-61, 1983). The cavitate was centrifuged at 800 x g for 10 minutes at 4° C, and the granule-containing supernatant was collected. Granules were harvested by centrifugation at 27,000 x G for 40 minutes and stored at -80° C.

PMN Granule extracts. Preparations of frozen granules from $1-5 \times 10^{10}$ PMN were extracted with 5 ml of ice cold 10% acetic acid per 1×10^9 cell equivalents. After stirring on ice for 18 hours, the suspension was clarified by centrifugation at 27,000 x G for 20 minutes at 4° C and the supernatants were lyophilized and stored at -70° C.

Size exclusion chromatography. Lyophilized granule extract was dissolved in 10% acetic acid at a concentration of ca. 1×10^9 cell equivalents per ml, clarified by centrifugation, and loaded onto a 4.8 x 110 cm column of BioGel P-60 equilibrated in 5% acetic acid. The column was run at 8° C with an elution rate of 2 cm per hour, and 15 ml fractions were collected with continuous monitoring at 280 nm.

Reversed phase HPLC (RP-HPLC). Low molecular weight components eluting from the size exclusion column were further resolved by RP-HPLC on a Waters 510 binary system on a 1 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column. Water and acetonitrile containing 0.1%

-34-

trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) or 0.13% heptafluorobutyric acid (HFBA) were used for gradient elution. Purified peptides were lyophilized, dissolved in 0.01% acetic acid at 100 - 500 µg/ml, and stored at -70° C.

Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS; 14) and acid-urea
5 (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 155:270-274, 1986) gel electrophoresis were used to the estimate molecular mass and/or purity of protein preparations as previously described (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 45:150-154, 1984).

Amino acid analysis. The amino acid composition of each peptide was determined on
6 N HCl hydrolysates (2 h, 150° C) of native and performic acid-oxidized, or reduced
10 and alkylated samples (Bidlemeier, B.A., *et al.*, *J. Chromatogr.* 336:93-104, 1984). Tryptophan content was determined by sequence analysis and by spectroscopic measurement on a Beckman DU 60 spectrophotometer by the method of Edelhoch (Edelhoch, H., *Biochem.* 6:1948-1954).

Sequence Analysis. For sequence analysis, purified BGP-A was subjected to automated
15 Edman sequence analysis. Automated sequence analysis was performed on an Applied Biosystems 475A instrument configured with on-line PTH-amino acid analysis. The sequence was confirmed by comparing the primary structure with the amino acid composition, and cDNA cloning.

Peptide synthesis. BGP-A and BGP-A-amide were synthesized at the 0.4 mmol scale
20 on a Millipore 9050 automated synthesizer by standard Fmoc/BOP/HOBt/NMM activation with a 30 minute coupling time. The starting resin for the free acid peptide was Fmoc-L-Valine-PEG-PS (Millipore), and for peptide amide the starting resin was Fmoc-PAL-PEG-PS (Barany, G., *et al.*, *Intercept*, R. Epton, Andover, England, 1992, pp.29-38; Van Abel, R.J., *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Applicant respectfully requests withdrawal of the rejection.* 45:401-409, 1995). Side chain protecting groups were Pmc for arginine, trityl for glutamine and histidine, tBoc for lysine and tBu for tyrosine.
25 Fmoc deprotection was with 2% piperidine and 2% DBU for 15 minutes. Tryptophan

-35-

and isoleucine were double coupled. Following chain assembly the resin was cleaved and deprotected with reagent K (82.5% TFA, 5% phenol, 5% thioanisole, 5% water and 2.5% ethanedithiol) for 4 hours. The peptide solution was made 30% in acetic acid, extracted with dichloromethane, and the aqueous phase was lyophilized. Purification
5 was performed by RP-HPLC on a 22.5 x 250 mm preparative Vydak C-18 column using 0.1% TFA and a linear acetonitrile gradient developed at 0.33% per minute. The purified peptides were analyzed by amino acid analysis, acid-urea gel electrophoresis and analytical RP-HPLC.

cDNA isolation and characterization. BGP-A: Total RNA was isolated from bovine
10 bone marrow using the acid guanidinium thiocyanate-phenol extraction method of Chomczynski and Sacchi (Chomczynski, P., *et al.*, *Analyt. Biochem.* 162:156-159, 1987). Bone marrow total RNA (1 mg) was then used with avian reverse transcriptase to synthesize first strand cDNA according to the manufacturer's protocol (5'-RACE System; Life Technologies; Gaithersburg, MD). This cDNA was used as a template for
15 3'-RACE, in which a degenerate gene specific primer was paired with an oligo (dT)₁₅-anchor primer to generate the 3'-end of the BGP-A cDNA. PCR amplification was carried out using the following cycling parameters: 95 °C, 1 minutes; 55 °C, 1 minutes; 72 °C, 1 minutes for 35 cycles. 5'-RACE was carried out in a similar fashion with the exception that first strand cDNA was tailed using terminal transferase and different gene
20 specific and anchor primers were used. PCR-amplified RACE products were subcloned and sequenced as described previously (Yount, N.Y., *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 155:4476-4484, 1995). Once the 5'- and 3'-ends of the BGP-A cDNA were known, a PCR product corresponding to the full length BGP-A sequence was generated and characterized by sequence analysis.

25 Murine bone marrow total RNA and first strand cDNA were generated as for BGP-A. Two gene specific primers were then used to PCR amplify a sequence corresponding to a BGP-A homolog. This sequence was subcloned and sequenced as described above.

-36-

Antimicrobial assay. *E. coli* ML35, *S. aureus* 502A, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans* were used as target organisms in a microbicidal suspension assay as previously described (Selsted, M.E., *Genetic Engineering: Principles and Methods*, J.K. Setlow, Plenum Press, New York, 1993, pp. 131-147).

5 EXAMPLE 1

PURIFICATION OF BGP-A

- Previous electrophoretic analyses of the acid-soluble proteins of bovine PMN granules demonstrated that these preparations contain a complex mixture of proteins varying in size from 1,000 to 200,000 D (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 10 1992). Acetic acid extract of a granule-enriched fraction from 1.3×10^{10} neutrophils was chromatographed on a Bio-Gel P-60 column as described above in the section titled, "Materials and Methods." Approximately 2×10^{10} cell equivalents of acid solubilized granule protein was fractionated on a BioGel P-60 column and antibacterial activity in pooled eluent fractions was assayed as described in the "Materials and Methods."
- 15 Fractions corresponding to Peak E were lyophilized and subjected to further purification by RP-HPLC. Each peak (A-F in Fig. 1A) contained bactericidal activity against *S. aureus* and *E. coli*. Peak F was predominantly comprising indolicidin, a novel thirteen residue antibiotic peptide amide (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295), and Peak E contained at least 13 β -defensins.
- 20 Peak E fractions were combined and further purified by HPLC. One tenth of the pooled fractions from Peak E (Fig. 1a) was loaded on a 1 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column equilibrated in 0.1% TFA/water (solvent A) at a flow rate of 3.0 ml/min. A linear gradient of acetonitrile (20% to 45%) containing 0.1% TFA (solvent B) was applied at the rate of 0.33% per min. Fractions were collected using the peak cutting mode of a
- 25 Pharmacia Frac-200 fraction collector. The initial RP-HPLC purification of Peak E fractions yielded a complex chromatogram (Fig. 1B) in which most peaks contained two

-37-

or more peptides as determined by acid-urea PAGE. However, BGP-A was eluted as an isolated, virtually pure peak (indicated by the asterisk symbol "*" in Fig. 1B) early in the RP-HPLC chromatogram. Final purification (Fig. 2) was obtained by a second round of RP-HPLC.

5 EXAMPLE 2

AMINO ACID AND SEQUENCE ANALYSIS OF BGP-A

The composition of BGP-A was established by amino acid analysis (Figure 2). Approximately 5 µg of purified BGP-A was injected onto a 0.4 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column run at a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min. Solvents are the same as described above for Figure 1B. Gradient conditions: 10% B to 50% B in 25 min. *B. Acid-urea gel of purified BGP-A.* A 2 µg sample of purified BGP-A was loaded onto a 12.5% acid-urea polyacrylamide gel that was electrophoresed for 4 hours at 250 V (lane 2). A 100 µg sample of crude acid extract from bovine neutrophil granules (lane 1) was run in parallel. Staining was with Coomassie Blue containing 15% formalin. Absorbance scans of BGP-A were carried out between 300 and 200 nm, providing an accurate estimate of tyrosine and tryptophan content (Edelhoch, H., *Biochem.* 6:1948-1954, 1967). Automated sequence analysis was carried out on 2 nmol of BGP-A. Repetitive sequencing yields averaged ≥90 percent, allowing for unambiguous assignment of all thirteen residues. The complete amino acid sequence of BGP-A is:

20 Tyr-Lys-Ile-Ile-Gln-Gln-Trp-Pro-His-Tyr-Arg-Arg-Val (SEQ ID NO: 5; Fig. 6)

A protein sequence search using the BLAST algorithm (Altschul, S.F., *et al.*, *J. Molec. Biol.* 215:403-410, 1990) revealed no similar amino acid sequences among the GenBank Data base.

EXAMPLE 3

25 SYNTHESIS OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE

The two synthetic BGP-A forms were assembled as N^α-Fmoc protected amino acids. (The acid-urea gel patterns of the purified peptides are shown in Fig. 3.) A 12.5% acid-urea gel was loaded with 2-4 µg of natural BGP-A (Fig. 3, lane 1), synthetic BGP-A (Fig. 3, lane 2) or synthetic BGP-A-amide (Fig. 3, lane 3). Staining was as described

-38-

for Fig. 2. The yields of the HPLC-purified material were 31.4% for the free acid form, and 22.1% for the carboxamidated form.

EXAMPLE 4

ISOLATION AND SEQUENCING OF BGP-A cDNA CLONES

- 5 The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) and predicts a 21 kD precursor composed of 190 residues (Fig. 4; SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the BGP-A precursor, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide (Von Heijne, G., *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133:17-21, 1983). The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region containing 156 residues. The final 13
- 10 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 6).

- To determine if the BGP-A precursor was homologous to other nucleotide or protein sequences, a Blast search of the GenBank database was carried out. Some homology between the BGP-A sequence and a partial cDNA sequence isolated from murine
- 15 adenocarcinoma of unknown tissue origin was identified. Using consensus primers derived from the murine adenocarcinoma and BGP-A sequences, a cDNA encoding a BGP-A like sequence from mouse bone marrow (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5) was isolated. This full-length cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor comprising signal pro-peptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A
- 20 (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). Based on this similarity, this sequence isolated from murine bone marrow cDNA is designated as mouse granulocyte peptide A (MGP-A; Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5 and Fig. 6, SEQ ID NO: 7).

EXAMPLE 5**ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE.**

Natural and synthetic BGP-A and synthetic BGP-A-amide were tested for their microbicidal activities against *S. aureus* 502A, *E. coli* ML35, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans*. Using a microbicidal suspension assay (Selsted, M.E., *Genetic Engineering: Principles and Methods*, J.K. Setlow, Plenum Press, New York, 1993, pp.131-147), each peptide was tested against the four test organisms with peptide concentrations ranging from 5-100 µg/ml. The bactericidal and fungicidal activities of the three peptide preparations were assessed using a standard microbicidal assay.

10 Organisms were grown to mid-log phase, harvested, and suspended to 2×10^7 CFU/ml. The incubation mixture contained $1-2 \times 10^6$ CFU/ml, 10 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.4, and peptide at concentrations up to 100 µg/ml. After 1 h of incubation at 37 C (4 h incubations for *C. neoformans*), serial 10-fold dilutions were plated on Trypticase Soy Agar (bacteria) or *S. abaroud* dextrose agar (fungi), and incubated for 24-48 h at

15 37 C. Killing was quantitated by colony counting, and plotted as a function of peptide concentration in the incubation.

The data, presented in Figure 7, reveal the dose-dependent activity of each peptide as measured by the reduction in colony forming units after a 1 or 4 hour incubation interval. These data demonstrate 1) that BGP-A was microbicidal against each

20 organism; 2) that synthetic BGP-A and natural BGP-A were equal in potency, suggesting that the activity of the natural peptide was attributable to the purified compound and not to a contaminant; and 3) that the carboxamidated form of BGP-A is much more potent against most of the targets than is the free-carboxyl form.

The mature peptide was microbicidal *in vitro* against representative Gram positive

25 and Gram negative bacteria, and yeast forms of two fungi. The antimicrobial activity of the natural peptide was validated by demonstration that synthetic BGP-A had equivalent killing activity.

EXAMPLE 6**ACTIVITY OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE TO TREAT AN LPS DISORDER**

- The effect of the BGP, MGP, BGP-A and MGP-A peptides of the invention on LPS-induced TNF in macrophages can be determined by those in the art, according to standard methods. For example, macrophage cells are grown by seeding cells into a cell culture flask and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ for 1 week. Macrophage cell media [(Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium with Hepes buffer 450 ml; 2.4mM L-glutamine 3ml (400mM); Pen/Strep 3ml (10⁴U/ml of Pen, 1 mg/ml strep); and 10% heat inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS) 50ml)] is then completely removed from flasks.
- 10 10 mls of cell dissociation solution (Sigma) is added to each flask and incubated at 37°C for 10 minutes. Cells are removed from flasks, diluted in macrophage cell media and centrifuged for approximately six minutes. The cell pellet is resuspended in 5ml of media/ flask used. 100µl cell suspension is removed and added to 400µl of trypan blue and cells are counted using a hemocytometer. The cell suspension is diluted to 1 x 10⁶
- 15 cells / ml and 1 ml of suspension is added per well of a 24 well plate. The 24 well plates are incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ overnight.

- After an overnight incubation, the media is aspirated from all the wells. 100µl of Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is added at 100ng/100µl. BGP-A and MGP-A is added at the desired concentration/100µl to specified wells. Macrophage cell media is added to a
- 20 final volume of 1 ml/well. The plates are incubated for six hours at 37°C, 5% CO₂. The supernatant is removed from the wells and stored overnight at 4°C. For those wells in which whole bacteria is added directly to the wells, the supernatant is centrifuged in 0.2µm filter eppendorf tubes for 5 minutes.

- The supernatants are then used in cell cytotoxic L929 assay. The samples are
- 25 transferred to 96 well plates. 50µl of TNF media is added to all the wells in all the plates except to those wells in the first row. 10µl of murine TNF standard (20ng/ml) and 90µl of TNF media is added in duplicate to the plate and diluted 1:2 down the plate to the second to last row. Test samples (75µl), comprising the supernatants from the

-41-

macrophage cell assays, are added to separate rows in duplicate and diluted 1:3 to the second to last rows.

TNF-sensitive L929 mouse fibroblast cells are grown by seeding 10^6 cells into a 162cm^2 cell culture flask and left to grow for 1 week. L929 cells are removed from the flask with 10mls of trypsin-EDTA/flask and incubated 3-5 minutes. Cell suspension is diluted and centrifuged for 6 minutes. The pellet is resuspended in 5 mls of fresh L929 media/flask and counted (same as macrophage cells). Cell suspension is diluted to 10^6 cells/ml. 100 μl is used to inoculate each well of the 96 well plates with the supernatants. (L929 Growth Media is the same as macrophage cell media except instead of FBS, 50 mls of 10% heat inactivated horse serum is utilized; TNF Assay Media is the same as macrophage cell media except 4 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ Actinomycin D is added.)

The plates are incubated at 37°C at 5% CO_2 for 2 days. The media is then aspirated and replaced with 100 μl of the dye MTT (0.5mg/ml) in modified Eagle Medium without phenol red. The plates are then incubated at 37°C at 5% CO_2 for 3 hours. The dye is then removed and replaced with 100 μl of absolute ethanol. The plates are left at room temperature for 10 - 15 minutes to dissolve the formazan dye crystals.

The plates are read at 570nm in a ELISA plate reader with 690nm reference filter. One unit of TNF activity is defined as the amount required to kill 50% of the L929 cells. The TNF level in Units per ml therefore is the reciprocal of the dilution which led to a 50% killing of L929 cells.

It is to be understood that, while the invention has been described with reference to the above detailed description, the foregoing description is intended to illustrate, but not to limit, the scope of the invention. Other aspects, advantages, and modifications of the invention are within the scope of the following claims. All publications, patent applications, patents, and other references mentioned herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-42-

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. An isolated antimicrobial peptide comprising an amino acid sequence YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), wherein X can be any amino acid.
- 5 2. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the amino acid sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 6.
3. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the amino acid sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 7.
4. The peptide of any of claims 1-3, wherein the peptide comprises at least
10 one modified amino acid.
5. The peptide of claim 4, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
6. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the peptide exhibits antimicrobial
15 activity against microorganisms selected from the group consisting of gram positive bacteria, gram negative bacteria, fungi and viruses.
7. The peptide of claim 6, wherein the organism is selected from the group consisting of: *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *C. albicans*, *S. typhimurium*, and *C. neoformans*.
8. An isolated antimicrobial polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as
20 set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3 or functional fragments thereof.

-43-

9. An isolated antimicrobial polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO: 5 or functional fragments thereof.
10. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 1 or functional fragments thereof.
- 5 11. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 6 or functional fragments thereof.
12. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 7 or functional fragments thereof.
- 10 13. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO: 3 or functional fragments thereof.
14. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO: 5 or functional fragments thereof.

15. The polynucleotide of claims 13 or 14, wherein such sequence is characterized by:
- a) nucleotide sequences which hybridize under stringent conditions with the polynucleotide of claim 13 or 14;
 - b) nucleotide sequences which encode peptides with conservative variations from the amino acid sequences encoded by the DNA of claim 13 or 14;
 - c) the nucleotide sequence of claim 13 or 14, wherein T is U;
 - d) functional fragments of a), b), or c) which encode peptides which retain the biological activity of BGP-A, or MGP-A; and
 - e) degenerate nucleotide sequences encoding the amino acid sequence as encoded by any of a), b), c) or d).
16. An antibody that binds to SEQ ID NO: 1.
17. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody is monoclonal.
18. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody is polyclonal.
- 20 19. A method of microbicidal or microbistatic inhibition in an environment capable of sustaining microbial growth comprising administering to the environment a microbicidal or microbistatical effective amount of a peptide having an amino acid sequence of YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), wherein X can be any amino acid.

-45-

20. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 6.
21. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 7.
- 5 22. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3, or functional fragments thereof.
23. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 5, or functional fragments thereof.
24. The method of claim 19, further comprising at least one additional
10 antimicrobial composition.
25. The method of claim 24, wherein the antimicrobial composition is selected from the group consisting of an antibiotic, an antifungal, and an antiviral agent.
26. The method of claim 25, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from
15 a class of antibiotic agents selected from the group consisting of aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, quinolones, tetracyclines, glycopeptides, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.
27. The method of claim 26, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from the
20 group consisting of amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucaptate/lactobionate/stearate, penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin,

-46-

- azlocillin, piperacillin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, imipenem, 5 aztreonam, fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, cinoxacin, doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline, vancomycin, and teicoplanin.
28. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide comprises at least one modified amino acid.
- 10 29. The method of claim 28, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
30. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide is an effective microbicidal or microbistatic agent against microorganisms selected from the group consisting of gram positive bacteria, gram negative bacteria, 15 fungi and viruses.
31. The peptide of claim 30, wherein the organism is selected from the group consisting of: *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *C. albicans*, *S. typhimurium*, and *C. neoformans*.
32. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is an organism.
- 20 33. The method of claim 32, wherein the environment is an animal.
34. The method of claim 32, wherein the environment is a human.
35. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is a food or food product.

-47-

36. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is a water supply.
37. A method of inhibiting a lipopolysaccharide (LPS) associated disorder in a subject having, or at risk of having, such a disorder, comprising administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a peptide having an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of: SEQ ID NO: 1; SEQ ID NO: 3, SEQ ID NO: 5, SEQ ID NO: 6 and SEQ ID NO: 7 or functional fragments thereof.
38. The method of claim 37, further comprising at least one additional antimicrobial composition.
39. The method of claim 38, wherein the antimicrobial composition is selected from the group consisting of an antibiotic, an antifungal, and an antiviral agent.
40. The method of claim 39, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from a class of antibiotic agents selected from the group consisting of aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, quinolones, tetracyclines, glycopeptides, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.

-48-

41. The method of claim 40, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from the group consisting of amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucate/lactobionate/stearate, penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin, azlocillin, piperacillin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, imipenem, aztreonam, fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, cinoxacin, doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline, vancomycin, and teicoplanin.
42. The method of claim 37, wherein the peptide comprises at least one modified amino acid.
43. The method of claim 42, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
44. A method of inhibiting protozoan growth comprising contacting a protozoan with an inhibitory effective amount of a peptide selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO: 1, 6 and 7.

1/5

FIG. 1A

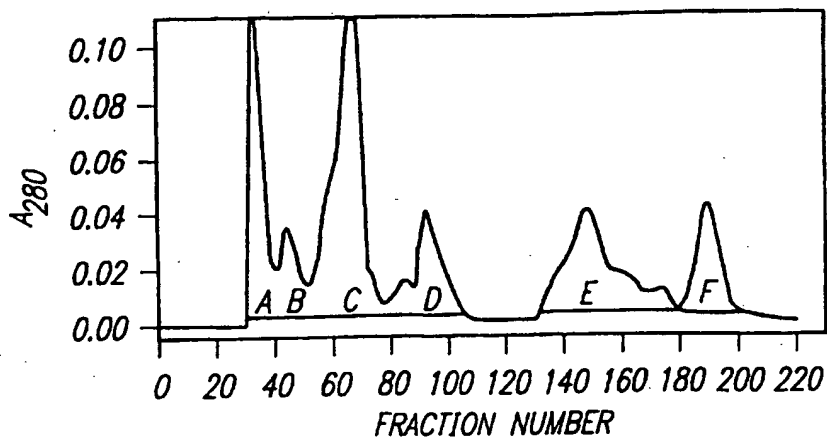


FIG. 1B

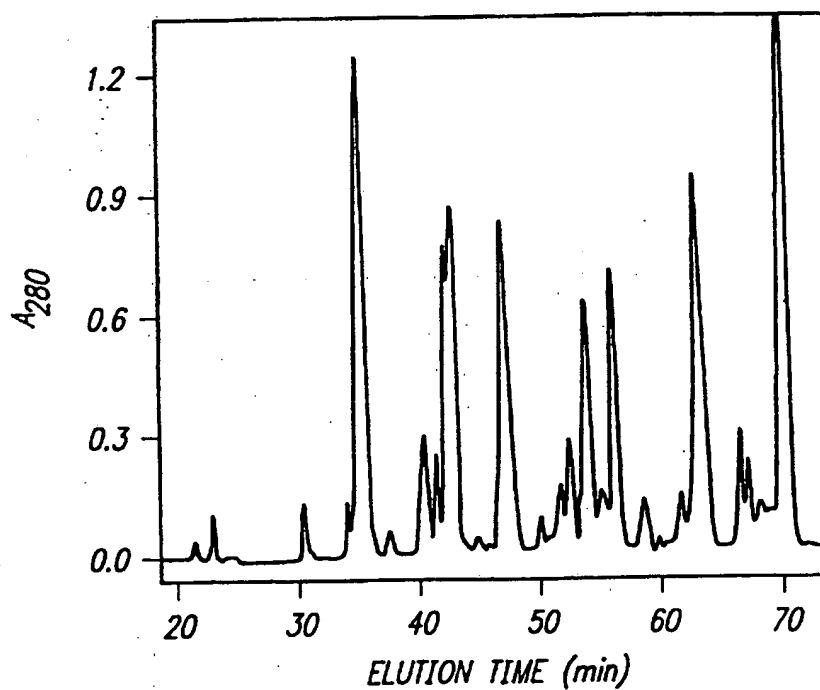


FIG. 6

BNP-A
MNP-A

Y	K	I	I	Q	Q	W	P	H	Y	R	R	V
Y	Q	V	I	Q	S	W	E	H	Y	R	E	

13
12

2/5

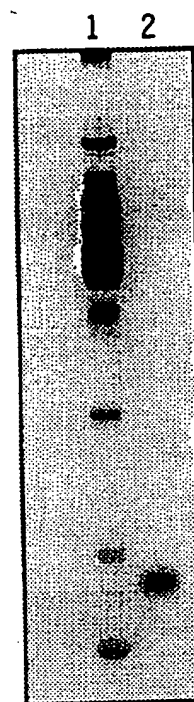
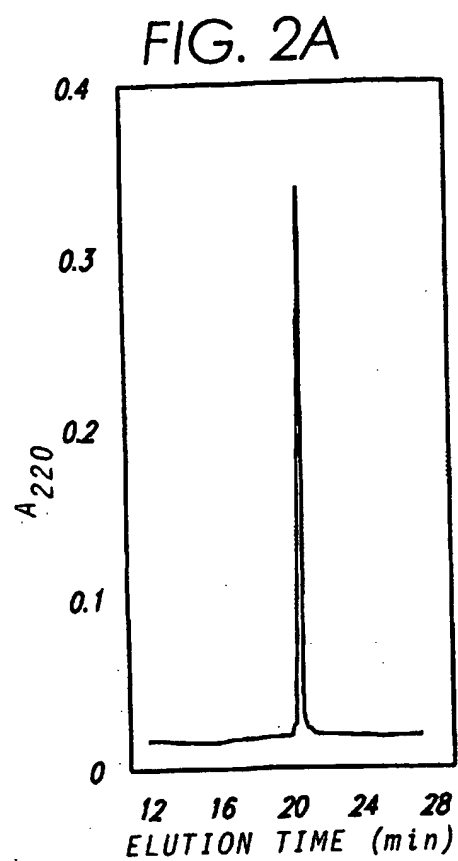
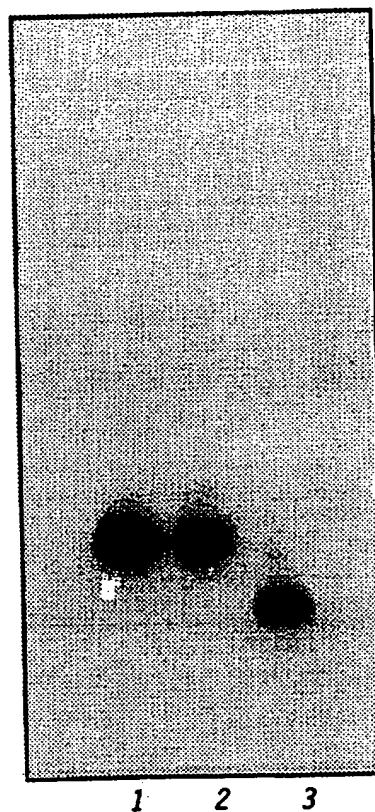


FIG. 2B

FIG. 3



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

3/5

AGTCTCCGCGTGTCTTTCTGCCTGCCATGTCTCGCCGCTACACACCGC 50
M S R R Y T P

TCGCCTGGGTCTCTCTCGCCCTCCTGGGCCTCGGGGCGGCTCAAGACTGC 100
L A W V L L A L L G L G A A Q D C

GGCAGCATCGTGTCCCGCGGAAAGTGGGGCGCCCTGGCATCCAAGTGCAG 150
G S I V S R G K W G A L A S K C S

CCAGAGGCTAAGACAGCCTGTGCGCTACGTGGTGGTGTGCGACACGGCGG 200
Q R L R Q P V R Y V V V S H T A

GCAGCGTCTGCAACACTCCGGCCTCGTGCCAGAGGCAGGCCCAAACGTG 250
G S V C N T P A S C Q R Q A Q N V

CAGTACTACCACGTGCGGGAGCGGGGCTGGTGGGACGTGGGCTACAATTT 300
Q Y Y H V R E R G W C D V G Y N F

CCTGATCGGAGAAGATGGGCTCGTGTATGAGGGCCGGGGCTGGAACACCT 350
L I G E D G L V Y E G R G W N T

TAGGTGCTCACTCTGGGCCCACGTGGAACCCCATAGCCATCGGCATCTCC 400
L G A H S G P T W N P I A I G I S

TTCATGGGCAACTACATGCATCGGGTGCCCCGGCCTCTGCTCTCAGGGC 450
F M G N Y M H R V P P A S A L R A

GGCCCAGAGTCTGCTGGCTTGTGGCGCAGCTCGGGGATACCTGACTCCTA 500
A Q S L L A C G A A R G Y L T P

ACTACGAAGTCAAAGGACACCGCGATGTGCAGCAGACGCTCTCTCAGGG 550
N Y E V K G H R D V Q Q T L S P G

GACGAGCTCTATAAAATCATCCAGCAGTGGCCGCACTACCGCCGCGTGTG 600
D E L Y K I I Q Q W P H Y R R V

AGGGCCTGTCCGTCTTCTCACACCCACCCATCCCATCAGAAACCCACC 650

GCCTTCCCCTGCCCCAATAAAGGCGAAGCTTAAACTGT 688

FIG. 4

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

4/5

ATACACAGCCCTGCGTCCTGTGCGGCACGTCCAGCATGTTGTTTGCCTGT 50
M L F A C

GCTCTCCTTGCCCTCCTGGGTCTGGCAACCTCCTGCAGTTTCATCGTGCC 100
A L L A L L G L A T S C S F I V P

CCGCAGTGAGTGGAGGGCCCTGCCATCCGAGTGCTCTAGCCGCCTGGGGC 150
R S E W R A L P S E C S S R L G

ACCCAGTTCGCTACGTGGTGATCTCACACACAGCCGGCAGCTTCTGCAAC 200
H P V R Y V V I S H T A G S F C N

AGCCCGGACTCCTGTGAACAGCAGGCCCGCAATGTGCAGCATTACCACAA 250
S P D S C E Q Q A R N V Q H Y H K

GAATGAGCTGGGCTGGTGCGATGTAGCCTACAACCTCCTTATTGGAGAGG 300
N E L G W C D V A Y N F L I G E

ACGGTCATGTCTATGAAGGCCGAGGCTGGAACATCAAGGGTGACCACACA 350
D G H V Y E G R G W N I K G D H T

GGGCCCATCTGGAATCCCATGTCTATTGGCATCACCTTCATGGGGAACTT 400
G P I W N P M S I G I T F M G N F

CATGGACCGGGTACGCAAAGCGGCCCTCCGTGCTGCCCTAAATCTTCTG 450
M D R V R K A A L R A A L N L L

GAATCTGGGGTGTCTCGGGGCTTCCTGAGATCCAACCTATGAAGTCAAAGG 500
E S G V S R G F L R S N Y E V K G

ACACCGGGATGTGCAAAGCACTCTCTCTCCAGGTGACCAACTCTATCAGG 550
H R D V Q S T L S P G D Q L Y Q

TCATCCAAAGCTGCGAACACTACCGAGAGTGAGAGACCTTGAGACCTAGT 600
V I Q S W E H Y R E

GAGAATCCCCCCCCCAGCCGAAATCCCTCCTGCCACCTGCTTCTTCC 650

CATTGACCCCCAATAAAGACTCAGCACC 678

FIG. 5

FIG. 7-1

5/5

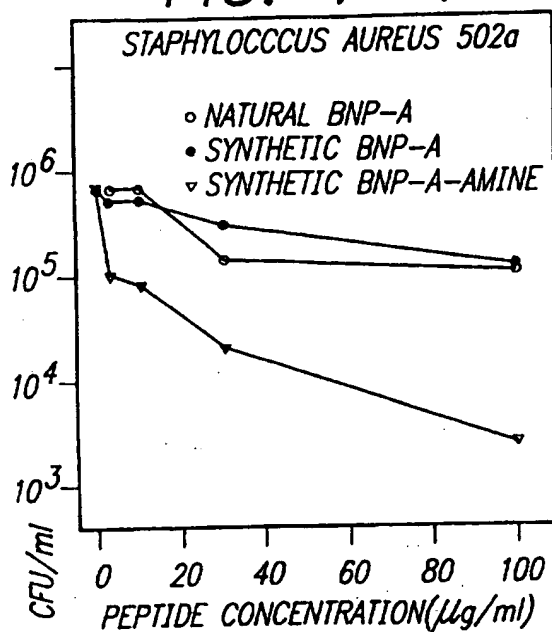


FIG. 7-2

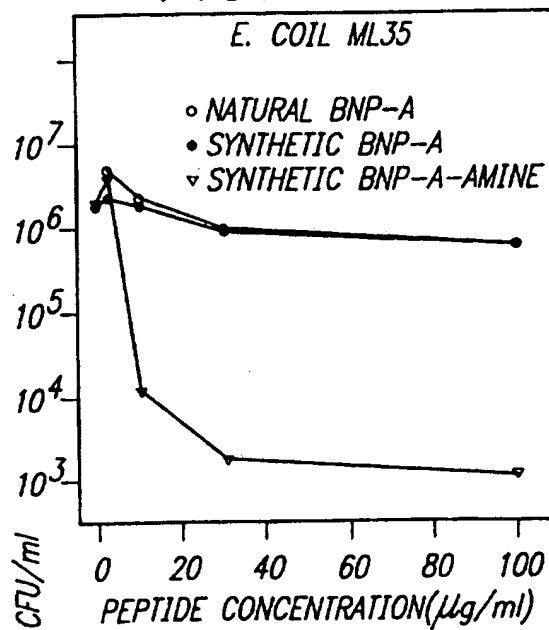


FIG. 7-3

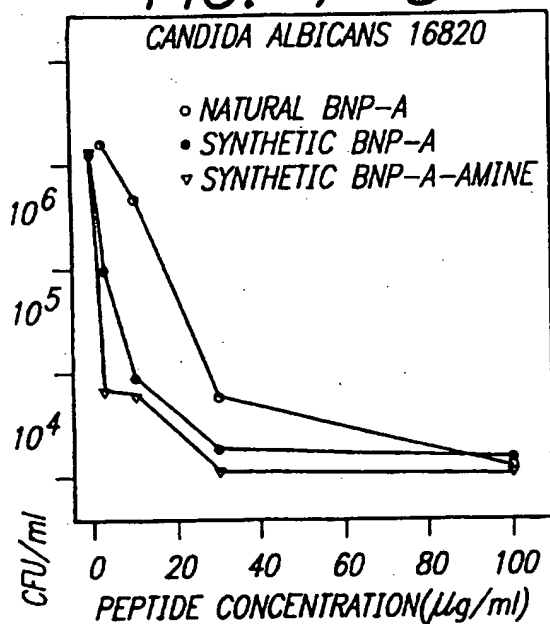
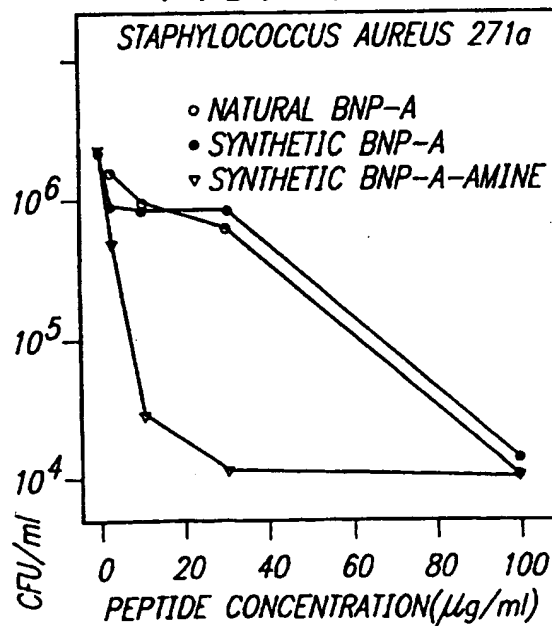


FIG. 7-4



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/02218

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : A61K 38/00, 38/04, 39/12; C07K 5/00, 7/00, 16/00, 17/00
US CL : 424/185.1; 514/14, 15; 530/327, 388.24, 389.2; 536/23.5
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/185.1; 514/14, 15; 530/327, 388.24, 389.2; 536/23.5

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, MEDLINE, EMBASE, LIFESCI, REGISTRY, BIOSIS, WPID

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 5,459,235 A (SELSTED ET AL.) 17 October 1995, see entire document.	1-44
Y	DIAMOND et al. Airway epithelial cells are the site of expression of a mammalian antimicrobial peptide gene. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. May 1993, Vol. 90, pages 4596-4600, see entire document.	1-44
Y	SELSTED et al. Defensins in granules of phagocytic and non-phagocytic cells. Trends in Cell Biology. March 1995, Vol. 5, pages 114-119, see entire document.	1-44

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	* T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
* A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	* X*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
* E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	* Y*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
* L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	* G*	document member of the same patent family
* O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
* P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search
07 APRIL 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report

15 APR 1997

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Authorized officer

PATRICK NOLAN

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/02218

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	ZANETTI et al. The cDNA of the Neutrophil Antibiotic Bac5 Predicts a Pro-sequence Homologous to a Cysteine Proteinase Inhibitor That Is Common to Other Neutrophil Antibiotics. J. of Biol. Chem. 05 January 1993, Vol. 268, No. 1, pages 522-526, see entire document.	1-44

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : A61K 38/00, 38/04, 39/12, C07K 5/00, 7/00, 16/00, 17/00		A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 97/29765 (43) International Publication Date: 21 August 1997 (21.08.97)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US97/02218 (22) International Filing Date: 13 February 1997 (13.02.97) (30) Priority Data: 60/011,834 16 February 1996 (16.02.96) US (71) Applicant: THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA (US/US); 22nd floor, 300 Lakeside Drive, Oakland, CA 94612-3550 (US). (72) Inventor: SELSTED, Michael, E.; 16 Young Court, Irvine, CA 92715 (US). (74) Agent: BERLINER, Robert; Robbins, Berliner & Carson, 5th floor, 201 N. Figueroa Street, Los Angeles, CA 90012-2628 (US).		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, UZ, VN, YU, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). Published <i>With international search report.</i>	
(54) Title: ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND METHODS OF USE			
(57) Abstract <p>Novel antimicrobial peptides from bovine and murine neutrophils are provided. The peptides, designated bovine granulocyte peptide A (BGP-A) and murine granulocyte peptide A (MGP-A) were purified to homogeneity from peripheral blood granulocytes. The amino acid and nucleotide sequence of BGP-A and MGP-A are also provided. A synthetic version of BGP-A and MGP-A is also provided. The purified BGP-A peptide is shown to have antimicrobial activity indistinguishable from that of natural BGP-A. Synthetic carboxamidated analogs of BGP-A (BGP-A-amide) and MGP-A (MGP-A-amide) are also provided.</p>			

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

ANTIMICROBIAL PEPTIDES AND METHODS OF USE

This invention was made with Government support under Grant No. AI22931 awarded by the National Institutes of Health. The Government has certain rights in this invention.

5 1. *Field of the Invention*

This invention relates generally to antimicrobial peptides, and, more specifically, to peptides designated bovine granulocyte peptide -A (BGP-A), bovine granulocyte peptide -A-amide (BGP-A-amide), murine granulocyte peptide -A(MGP-A) and murine granulocyte peptide -A-amide (MGP-A-amide) and methods of uses thereof.

10 2. *Background of the Invention*

The cytoplasmic granules of polymorphonuclear leukocytes (neutrophils, granulocytes, PMNs) contain antimicrobial peptides that allow these cells to inactivate ingested microbial targets by mechanisms considered "oxygen independent" (Lehrer, R. I., *et al.*, *Blood* 76:2169-2181, 1990). These granule proteins constitute an antimicrobial arsenal that includes defensins (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Trends in Cell Biology* 5:114-119, 1995), β -defensins (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993), indolicidin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 1992), and other broad spectrum antibiotic peptides that are released into the phagosome during phagolysosome fusion. To date, members of the defensin family have been isolated from neutrophils of human (Ganz, T., *et al.*, *J. Clin. Invest.* 76:1427-1435, 1985), rabbit (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 260:4579-4584, 1985), rat (Eisenhauer, P., *et al.*, *Immun.* 58:3899-3902, 1990), and guinea pig origin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 55:2281-2286, 1987), and most recently from the Paneth cells of mouse small intestine (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 118:929-936, 1992). β -defensins have been isolated from the large granules of bovine neutrophils (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993), bovine tracheal epithelium (Diamond, G.M., *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88:3952-3956, 1991), and human plasma (Bensch, K. W., *et al.*, *FEBS Lett.* 368:331-

-2-

335), and indolicidin is a component of the large granules of bovine PMN (Van Abel, R.J., *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein* 45:401-409, 1995).

The unique features of ruminant granulocytes were first described by Gennaro and Baggiolini and coworkers (Baggiolini, M., *et al.*, *Lab. Invest.* 52:151-158, 1985; 5 Gennaro, R., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 96:1651-1661, 1983) who demonstrated that neutrophils of cattle, goats, sheep, and ibex are endowed with many unusually large cytoplasmic granules that are distinct from the classical azurophil and specific granules. Subsequent studies established that most of the antibacterial peptides of bovine neutrophils are contained in these unique organelles. Romeo and Gennaro have demonstrated that the 10 large granules of bovine neutrophils contain potent microbicidal peptides that are structurally distinct from defensins (Gennaro, R., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 57:3142-3146, 1989; Romeo, D., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263:9573-9575, 1988). These include three arginine-rich peptides, termed batenecins, which efficiently kill several gram positive and gram negative bacteria *in vitro*. Recently, the isolation and characterization of a 15 novel tridecapeptide amide, indolicidin, from bovine neutrophils was reported (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 1992). This cationic peptide was shown to be unusually rich in tryptophan, and to have potent bactericidal activity against *E. coli* and *S. aureus*. More recently the isolation of 13 β -defensins from bovine neutrophils demonstrated that these peptides are covalently dissimilar to defensins, while possessing 20 a similar folded conformation (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 268:6641-6648, 1993).

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides peptides useful as antimicrobial agents. The invention arose from the discovery of a novel tridecapeptide from bovine peripheral blood granulocytes. The purified peptides and their carboxamide analogs have potent
5 antibacterial, antiviral, antiprotozoal, and antifungal activities. These peptides, designated BGP-A and MGP-A, are effective compounds for use in human and/or veterinary medicine, or as agents in agricultural, food science, or industrial applications for example.

The details of the preferred embodiment of the present invention are set forth in the
10 accompanying drawings and the description below. Once the details of the invention are known, numerous additional innovations and changes will become obvious to one skilled in the art.

-4-

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figure 1 shows chromatographs of the purification of BGP-A. Figure 1a shows the gel filtration chromatography of bovine neutrophil granule extract. Figure 1b shows the reversed phase HPLC of the peak E fractions.

5

Figure 2 shows the analysis of purified BGP-A. Figure 2a shows the analytical RP-HPLC. Figure 2b shows the acid-urea gel of purified BGP-A.

Figure 3 shows the acid-urea PAGE of purified BGP-A and BGP-A-amide.

Figure 4 shows the cDNA nucleotide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 2) and the deduced precursor amino acid peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 3) of BGP-A.

10 Figure 5 shows the cDNA nucleotide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 4) and the deduced precursor amino acid peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 5) of MGP-A.

Figure 6 shows the mature BGP-A (SEQ ID NO: 6) and MGP-A (SEQ ID NO: 7) amino acid sequences. Hatched area indicates identical amino acids conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A. The consensus peptide amino acid sequence is identified as SEQ
15 ID NO: 1.

Figure 7 shows the microbicidal activities of natural and synthetic BGP-A and synthetic BGP-A-amide.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Before the present nucleic and amino acid sequences, compositions, reagents and methods and uses thereof are described, it is to be understood that this invention is not limited to the particular compositions, reagents, sequences and methodologies described
5 herein as such compositions, reagents, sequences and methodologies may vary. It is also to be understood that the terminology used herein is for the purpose of describing particular embodiments only, and that the terminology used herein is not intended to limit the scope of the present invention which will be limited only by the appended claims.

10 It must be noted that as used herein and in the appended claims, the singular forms "a," "an," and "the," include plural referents unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. Thus, for example, reference to "a reagent" includes one or more of such different reagents, reference to "an antibody" includes one or more of such different antibodies,
15 and reference to "the method" includes reference to equivalent steps and methods known to those of ordinary skill in the art that could be modified or substituted for the methods described herein.

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which the invention applies. Although any methods, compositions, reagents, sequences similar or
20 equivalent to those described herein can be used in the practice or testing of the invention, the preferred methods and materials are described herein. All publications mentioned herein are incorporated herein, including all figures, graphs, equations, illustrations, and drawings, to describe and disclose specific information for which the reference was cited in connection with.

25 The publications discussed above are provided solely for their disclosure before the filing date of the present application. Nothing herein is to be construed as an admission that the invention is not entitled to antedate such disclosure by virtue of prior invention.

-6-

Throughout this description, the preferred embodiment and examples shown should be considered as exemplars, rather than as limitations on the present invention.

During the purification of bovine granulocyte β -defensins, antimicrobial activity associated with a small peptide was detected that was different from any previously characterized. Presented herein is the purification, sequencing, synthesis, cDNA isolation, and antimicrobial properties of BGP-A, a thirteen-residue peptide antibiotic expressed in bovine granulocytes. The cDNA for a mouse homolog of BGP-A, isolated from mouse bone marrow and designated MGP-A, is also presented. The deduced MGP-A precursor was remarkably similar to that of BGP-A. The present invention also teaches the synthesis and antimicrobial properties of BGP-A-amide and MGP-A-amide which are analogs of BGP-A and MGP-A respectively.

The invention provides peptide molecules, designated bovine granulocyte peptide -A (BGP-A) and mouse granulocyte peptide -A (MGP-A) and their synthetic carboxamides, designated BGP-A-amide and MGP-A-amide; which exhibit a broad range of antimicrobial and antiprotozoal activity and consequently, are effective antimicrobial agents. Polynucleotides encoding BGP-A and MGP-A represent a new class of antimicrobial peptide genes. As demonstrated by the high conservation of the precursor structure in a ruminant and a rodent, this gene family appears to be remarkably conserved. In a manner similar to the generating of indolicidin (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Peptides: Chemistry and Biology*, ESCOM J.A. Smith and J.E. Rivier, 1992, pp. 905-907), the peptide is synthesized as a much larger prepropeptide and subsequently packaged in granules as the mature product of proteolytic processing. The methods used for the isolation and purification of BGP-A and MGP-A peptides are similar to those previously used for defensin-like peptides; such methods are taught in U.S. Patent Serial Nos. 4,453,252, 4,659,692, 4,705,777 and 5,242,902, all of which are incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

As used herein, the term "antimicrobial activity" refers to the ability of a compound to inhibit or irreversibly prevent the growth of a microorganism. Such inhibition or

-7-

prevention can be through a microbicidal action or microbistatic inhibition. Therefore, the term "microbicidal inhibition" or "inhibition of microbial growth" as used herein refers to the ability of the antimicrobial peptide to kill, or irrevocably damage the target organism. The term "microbistatic inhibition" as used herein refers to the growth of the target organism without death. Microbicidal or microbistatic inhibition can be applied to an environment either presently exhibiting microbial growth (i.e., therapeutic treatment) or an environment at risk of sustaining or supporting such growth (i.e., prevention or prophylaxis).

As used herein, the term "environment capable of sustaining or supporting microbial growth" refers to a fluid, tissue, space, organ, surface substance or organism where microbial growth can occur or where microbes can exist. Such environments can be, for example, animal tissue; skin or bodily fluids, water and other liquids, food, food products or food extracts, surfaces, crops and certain inanimate objects. It is not necessary that the environment promote the growth of the microbe, only that it permits its subsistence.

The antimicrobial, or antibacterial, activity of BGP-A or MGP-A can be measured against various pathogens by one of ordinary skill in the art. Microorganisms are grown to appropriate concentration, mixed with an appropriate medium, such as an agarosetrypticase soy medium, and contacted with BGP-A or MGP-A. After appropriate incubation, the antimicrobial activity is apparent from clear zones surrounding the antibacterial samples. The clear zones are dependent upon the concentration of the peptide. Further methods of determination of antimicrobial activity are taught in Example 5 and in the section entitled "Materials and Methods" herein and are commonly known by those in the art.

Additionally, the minimum inhibitory concentrations (MIC) of BGP-A or MGP-A to effect antimicrobial activity can be determined for a number of different microorganisms according to standard techniques. Briefly, cells are grown overnight at about 37°C in appropriate bacterial media and diluted in the same medium to give

-8-

concentrations of about 10^4 to 10^5 CFU/ml. The broth dilutions are set up in a 96 well microtiter plate, for example, mixing combinations of serially diluted microbes and peptides. After additions of serially diluted bacteria, or other microbes with serially diluted peptide concentrations, the plates are incubated overnight at about 37°C. The next day the plates are scored for the presence or absence of microbial growth in the wells, and the MIC is determined from the scoring.

As used herein, the term's BGP-A, BGP-A-amide, MGP-A and MGP-A-amide refer to peptides or peptidomimetics having generally about 8 to 20 amino acids which make up a chain having a net positive charge. In other words, these are cationic peptides. The peptides of the invention preferably have one or more aromatic amino acids. Illustrative peptide sequences are provided in Figs. 4-6 and as set forth in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7.

The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) with a predicted 21 kD precursor protein composed of 190 residues (SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the precursor peptide, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide. The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region containing 156 residues. The final 13 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence, YKIIQQWPHYRRV (SEQ ID NO: 6).

The full length MGP-A cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor peptide (SEQ ID NO: 4) comprising signal pro-peptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A (Fig. 5). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine MGP-A cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (YQVIQSWEHYRE) (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). A consensus sequence between the mature BGP and MGP peptides is set forth in Fig. 6 where the hatched area indicates identical amino acids that are conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A and in SEQ ID NO: 1 having an amino acid sequence of YXXIQXWXHYR, where X can be any amino acid. The peptides of the present invention include the SEQ ID NO: 1 consensus sequence. While not wanting to be bound by a particular theory, it is believed that the

C-terminus should contain a net positive charge so that the molecule remains active. For example, SEQ ID NO: 1, 6 and 7 all end with an arginine (R) residue, SEQ ID NO: 6 ends with an arginine (R) and valine (V), and SEQ ID NO: 7 ends with a glutamic acid (E) residue. Given that the invention provides both the consensus sequence
5 between mouse and bovine species and the individual DNA sequences encoding the peptides of the present invention, it would not require undue experimentation by the ordinary artisan to isolate homologous BGP/MGP sequences from other species, including human, porcine, ovine, etc., using the teachings supplied herein and methods common in the art (see Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold
10 Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference).

It should be appreciated that various modifications can be made to the BGP-A or MGP-A amino acid sequences without diminishing the antimicrobial activity of the peptides. It is intended that peptides or peptidomimetics of BGP-A or MGP-A exhibiting such
15 modifications, including amino acid additions, deletions or substitutions are within the scope of the invention. As used herein, the term "substantially the same sequence" refers to a peptide sequence either identical to, or having considerable homology with, for example, the sequences BGP-A or MGP-A as shown in Figs. 4, 5, and 6 and in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7. It is understood that limited modifications can be made to
20 the peptide which result in enhanced function. Likewise, it is also understood that limited modifications can be made without destroying the biological function of the peptide and that only part of the entire primary structure may be required to affect activity. For example, minor modifications of these sequences that do not completely destroy the activity also fall within this definition and within the definition of the
25 compound claimed as such. Modifications can include, for example, additions, deletions, or substitutions of amino acid residues, substitutions with compounds that mimic amino acid structure or function as well as the addition of chemical moieties such as amino and acetyl groups. The modifications can be deliberate or can be accidental such as through mutation in hosts that produce BGP-A or MGP-A peptides exhibiting

-10-

antimicrobial activity. All these modifications are included as long as the peptide retains its antimicrobial activity.

In some cases, it may be desirable to incorporate one or more non-natural amino acids in the synthetic peptides of the present invention. Possible non-natural amino acids will usually have at least an N-terminus and a C-terminus and will have side chains that are either identical to or chemically modified or substituted from a natural amino acid counter part. An example of a non-natural amino acid is an optical isomer of a naturally-occurring L-amino acid. All peptides were synthesized using L amino acids, however, all D forms of the peptides can be synthetically produced. In addition, C-terminal derivatives can be produced, such as C-terminal methyl esters, to increase the antimicrobial activity of a peptide of the invention. Numerous modifications are contemplated according to this invention. Besides the obvious approach of replacement of specific residues in the natural sequence, an alternative embodiment involves synthesis of the peptide from D-amino acids thus reducing potential inactivation by proteases. Such means are well known in the art. (See, for example, Wade *et al.*, *PNAS, USA* 87:4761-4765, 1990.) Examples of chemical modification or substitutions may include hydroxylation or fluorination of C-H bonds within natural amino acids. Such techniques are used in the manufacture of drug analogs of biological compounds and are known to those of ordinary skill in the art. In a preferred embodiment the modification of the peptides of the invention comprises modification by a carboxy terminal amide. Those of skill in the art can make similar substitutions to achieve peptides with greater antimicrobial activity and a broader host range. For example, the invention includes the peptides as set forth in SEQ ID NO:1, 3, 5, 6 and 7, as well as analogues, derivatives or functional fragments thereof, as long as the antimicrobial activity of the peptide remains. Minor modifications of the primary amino acid sequence of the peptides of the invention may result in peptides which have substantially equivalent antimicrobial activity as compared to the specific peptides as set forth in the SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 5, 6 and 7 described herein. Such modifications may be deliberate, as by site-directed mutagenesis, or may be spontaneous. All of the peptides produced by these modifications are included herein as long as the antimicrobial biological

-11-

activity of the original peptide still exists. BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the present invention also include functional fragments of the peptide or functional fragments of the nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide, as long as the activity of BGP-A or MGP-A remains. Smaller peptides containing the biological activity of BGP-A or MGP-A are also included in the invention as are smaller nucleic acid sequences encoding for all or a functional fragment of the peptide. The relative effectiveness of the functional fragments of the peptide or nucleic acid sequences encoding for functional fragments of the peptides of the invention can be readily determined by one of skill in the art by establishing the sensitivity of a microorganism to the peptide fragment. The effectiveness of the peptide functional fragments is assessed by measuring the potential microbicidal or microbistatic activity of the fragment or nucleic acid sequence encoding such a fragment as measured relative to the microbicidal ability of the BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of SEQ ID NO: 6 or 7 respectively. Testing is carried out as described in the section titled "Antimicrobial Assay" in the Materials and Methods section herein and in Example 5 of the present invention or by other standard antimicrobial tests (e.g., MIC) commonly known to those in the art.

Further, deletion of one or more amino acids can also result in a modification of the structure of the resultant peptide without significantly altering its biological activity. This can lead to the development of a smaller active peptide which would also have utility. For example, amino or carboxy terminal amino acids which may not be required for biological activity of the particular peptide can be removed. Peptides of the invention include any analog, homolog, mutant, isomer or derivative of the peptides disclosed in the present invention, so long as the bioactivity as described herein is remains. The methods and compositions of the present invention may also employ synthetic non-peptide compositions that have biological activity functionally comparable to that of BGP-A, MGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, or MGP-A-Amide. By "functionally comparable," it is meant that the shape, size, flexibility, and electronic configuration of the non-peptide molecule are such that the biological activity of the molecule is similar to the BGP-A, MGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, or MGP-A-Amide peptides. In particular, the non-peptide molecules should display comparable antimicrobial activity. Such non-

-12-

peptide molecules can be small molecules having a molecular weight in the range of about 100 to 1000 Daltons. The use of such small molecules is advantageous in the preparation of pharmacological compositions.

The identification of such non-peptide analog molecules can be performed using techniques known in the art of drug design. Such techniques include, but are not limited to, self-consistent field (SCF) analysis, configuration interaction (CI) analysis, and normal mode dynamics computer analysis, all of which are well described in the scientific literature. See, e.g., Rein et al., *Computer-Assisted Modeling of Receptor-Ligand Interactions*, Alan Liss, N.Y., (1989). Preparation of the identified compounds will depend on the desired characteristics of the compounds will involve standard chemical synthetic techniques. See, Cary et al., *Advanced Organic Chemistry*, part B, Plenum Press, New York (1983).

The term "conservative variation" as used herein denotes the replacement of an amino acid residue by another, biologically similar residue. Examples of conservative variations include the substitution of one hydrophobic residue such as isoleucine, valine, leucine or methionine for another, or the substitution of one polar residue for another, such as the substitution of arginine for lysine, glutamic for aspartic acid, or glutamine for asparagine, and the like. The term "conservative variation" also includes the use of a substituted amino acid in place of an unsubstituted parent amino acid provided that antibodies raised to the substituted peptide also immunoreact with the unsubstituted peptide.

The BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the present invention can be synthesized by methods well known in the art, such as through the use of automatic peptide synthesizers, by recombinant methods or well-known manual methods of peptide synthesis. In addition, they can be purified from natural sources such as white blood cells and from bone marrow of a vertebrate, preferably of mammalian origin. Such cells or tissues can be obtained by means well known to those skilled in the art.

-13-

The term "substantially pure" as used herein refers to BGP-A or MGP-A nucleic acid or protein which is substantially free of other proteins, lipids, carbohydrates or other materials with which it is naturally associated or that the peptide or protein so designated has been separated from its *in vivo* cellular environment. Because of the separation and purification, the substantially pure peptides and proteins are useful in ways that the non-separated impure peptides or proteins are not. One skilled in the art can purify BGP-A or MGP-A using standard techniques for protein purification. The substantially pure peptide will yield a single major band on an acid-urea gel. The purity of the BGP-A or MGP-A peptide can also be determined by amino-terminal amino acid sequence analysis and analytical RP-HPLC.

The invention also provides polynucleotides encoding the BGP-A or MGP-A protein. These polynucleotides include DNA, cDNA and RNA sequences which encode BGP-A or MGP-A. It is understood that all polynucleotides encoding all or a portion of BGP-A or MGP-A are also included herein, as long as they encode a peptide with BGP-A or MGP-A activity. Such polynucleotides include naturally occurring, synthetic, and intentionally manipulated polynucleotides. For example, BGP-A or MGP-A polynucleotide may be subjected to site-directed mutagenesis. The polynucleotides of the invention include sequences that are degenerate as a result of the genetic code. There are 20 natural amino acids, most of which are specified by more than one codon. Therefore, all degenerate nucleotide sequences are included in the invention as long as the amino acid sequence of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide encoded by the nucleotide sequence is functionally unchanged. The polynucleotide encoding BGP-A or MGP-A includes the nucleotide sequence in FIGURE 4 and 5 (SEQ ID NOs: 2 and 4), as well as complementary nucleic acid sequences. A complementary sequence may include an antisense nucleotide. When the sequence is RNA, the deoxynucleotides A, G, C, and T of SEQ ID Nos: 2 and 4 are replaced by ribonucleotides A, G, C, and U, respectively. Also included in the invention are fragments of the above-described nucleic acid sequences that are at least 15 bases in length, which is sufficient to permit the fragment to selectively hybridize to DNA (SEQ ID NOs: 2 and 4) that encodes the protein of FIGURE 4 and 5 (SEQ ID NOs: 3 and 5), under physiological conditions.

-14-

Also, provided by this invention are the nucleic acid sequences encoding the BGP-A or MGP-A peptides, vectors and host cells containing them and methods of expression to provide recombinantly produced peptides. This method comprises growing the host cell containing a nucleic acid encoding a peptide under suitable conditions such that the
5 nucleic acid is transmitted and/or translated and isolating the peptide so produced.

After the peptide of this invention is isolated, nucleic acids encoding the peptides are isolated by methods well known in the art, *infra*. These isolated nucleic acids can be ligated into vectors and introduced into suitable host cells for expression. Methods of ligation and expression of nucleic acids within cells are well known in the art, (see
10 Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference).

Specifically disclosed herein is a cDNA sequence containing the active portion of the BGP-A or MGP-A coding sequence. One of skill in the art could now use this sequence
15 to isolate other full length clones. The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) and predicts a 21 kD precursor composed of 190 residues (Fig. 4; SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the BGP-A precursor, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide (Von Heijne, G., *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133:17-21, 1983). The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region
20 containing 156 residues. The final 13 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 6). The full-length MGP-A cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor comprising signal propeptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5). Based on this similarity, this sequence isolated from murine bone marrow cDNA is designated
25 as murine neutrophil peptide A (MGP-A; Fig. 5; SEQ ID NOs: 5 and 7). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). The hatched area in Figure 6 indicates identical amino acids conserved between BGP-A and MGP-A. The consensus peptide amino acid sequence is YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), where X can be any amino acid.

-15-

DNA sequences of the invention can be obtained by several methods. For example, the DNA can be isolated using hybridization techniques which are well known in the art. These include, but are not limited to: 1) hybridization of genomic or cDNA libraries with probes to detect homologous nucleotide sequences, 2) polymerase chain reaction (PCR) on genomic DNA or cDNA using primers capable of annealing to the DNA sequence of interest, and 3) antibody screening of expression libraries to detect cloned DNA fragments with shared structural features. The sequences of a pair of nucleic acid molecules (or two regions within a single nucleic acid molecule) are said to be "complementary" to each other if base pairing interactions can occur between each nucleotide of one of the members of the pair and each nucleotide of the other member of the pair. A pair of nucleic acid molecules (or two regions within a single nucleic acid molecule) are said to "hybridize" to each other if they form a duplex by base pairing interactions between them. As known in the art, hybridization between nucleic acid pairs does not require complete complementarity between the hybridizing regions, but only that there is a sufficient level of base pairing to maintain the duplex under the hybridization conditions used.

Hybridization reactions are typically carried out under low to moderate stringency conditions, in which specific and some nonspecific interactions can occur. After hybridization, washing can be carried out under moderate or high stringency conditions to eliminate nonspecific binding. As known in the art, optimal washing conditions can be determined empirically, *e.g.*, by gradually increasing the stringency. Condition parameters that can be changed to affect stringency include, *e.g.*, temperature and salt concentration. In general, the lower the salt concentration and the higher the temperature, the higher the stringency. For example, washing can be initiated at a low temperature (*e.g.*, room temperature) using a solution containing an equivalent or lower salt concentration as the hybridization solution. Subsequent washing can be carried out using progressively warmer solutions having the same salt solution. Alternatively, the salt concentration can be lowered and the temperature maintained in the washing step, or the salt concentration can be lowered and the temperature increased. Additional

-16-

parameters can be altered to affect stringency, including, *e.g.*, the use of a destabilizing agent, such as formamide.

In nucleic acid hybridization reactions, the conditions used to achieve a particular level of stringency will vary, depending on the nature of the nucleic acids being hybridized.

- 5 For example, the length, degree of complementarity, nucleotide sequence composition (*e.g.*, GC v. AT content), and nucleic acid type (*e.g.*, RNA v. DNA) of the hybridizing regions of the nucleic acids can be considered in selecting hybridization conditions. An additional consideration is whether one of the nucleic acids is immobilized, for example, on a filter.
- 10 An example of progressively higher stringency conditions is as follows: 2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about room temperature (hybridization conditions); 0.2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about room temperature (low stringency conditions); 0.2 x SSC/0.1% SDS at about 42°C (moderate stringency conditions); and 0.1 x SSC at about 68°C (high stringency conditions). Washing can be carried out using only one of these conditions, *e.g.*, high
- 15 stringency conditions, or each of the conditions can be used, *e.g.*, for 10-15 minutes each, in the order listed above, repeating any or all of the steps listed. However, as mentioned above, optimal conditions will vary, depending on the particular hybridization reaction involved, and can be determined empirically.

- Preferably the BGP-A or MGP-A polynucleotide of the invention is derived from a
- 20 mammalian organism, and most preferably from a mouse, cow, or human. Screening procedures which rely on nucleic acid hybridization make it possible to isolate any gene sequence from any organism, provided the appropriate probe is available. Oligonucleotide probes, which correspond to a part of the sequence encoding the protein in question, can be synthesized chemically. This requires that short, oligopeptide
- 25 stretches of amino acid sequence must be known. The DNA sequence encoding the protein can be deduced from the genetic code, however, the degeneracy of the code must be taken into account. It is possible to perform a mixed addition reaction when the sequence is degenerate. This includes a heterogeneous mixture of denatured double-

stranded DNA. For such screening, hybridization is preferably performed on either single-stranded DNA or denatured double-stranded DNA. Hybridization is particularly useful in the detection of cDNA clones derived from sources where an extremely low amount of mRNA sequence relating to the peptide of interest is present. In other words, by using stringent hybridization conditions directed to avoid nonspecific binding, it is possible, for example, to allow the autoradiographic visualization of a specific cDNA clone by the hybridization of the target DNA to that single probe in the mixture which is its complete complement (Wallace, *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid Res.*, 9:879, 1981).

Therefore, given a partial DNA sequence of the BGP-A or MGP-A gene of interest, one of skill in the art would be able to prepare probes for isolation of a full length cDNA clone, without undue experimentation (see for example, Ausubel, *et al.*, *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology*, Units 6.3-6.4, Greene Publ., 1994; Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular Cloning*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratories, current edition).

The complement of specific DNA sequences encoding BGP-A or MGP-A can also be obtained by: 1) isolation of double-stranded DNA sequences from the genomic DNA; 2) chemical manufacture of a DNA sequence to provide the necessary codons for the peptide of interest; and 3) *in vitro* synthesis of a double-stranded DNA sequence by reverse transcription of mRNA isolated from a eukaryotic donor cell. In the latter case, a double-stranded DNA complement of mRNA is eventually formed which is generally referred to as cDNA. Of the three above-noted methods for developing specific DNA sequences for use in recombinant procedures, the isolation of genomic DNA isolates is the least common. This is especially true when it is desirable to obtain the microbial expression of mammalian peptides due to the presence of introns.

The synthesis of DNA sequences is frequently the method of choice when the entire sequence of amino acid residues of the desired peptide product is known. When the entire sequence of amino acid residues of the desired peptide is not known, the direct synthesis of DNA sequences is not possible and the method of choice is the synthesis of cDNA sequences. Among the standard procedures for isolating cDNA sequences of

-18-

- interest is the formation of plasmid- or phage-carrying cDNA libraries which are derived from reverse transcription of mRNA which is abundant in donor cells that have a high level of genetic expression. When used in combination with polymerase chain reaction technology, even rare expression products can be cloned. In those cases where
- 5 significant portions of the amino acid sequence of the peptide are known, the production of labeled single or double-stranded DNA or RNA probe sequences duplicating a sequence putatively present in the target cDNA may be employed in DNA/DNA hybridization procedures which are carried out on cloned copies of the cDNA which have been denatured into a single-stranded form (Jay, *et al.*, *Nucl. Acid*, 11:2325, 1983).
- 10 Several types of vectors are available and can be used to practice this invention, e.g., plasmid, DNA and RNA viral vectors, baculoviral vectors, and vectors for use in yeast. When the vector is a plasmid, it generally contains a variety of components including promoters, signal sequences, phenotypic selection genes, origins of replication sites, and other necessary components as are known to those of skill in the art.
- 15 Promoters most commonly used in prokaryotic vectors include the lac Z promoter system, the alkaline phosphatase pho A promoter, the bacteriophage λ PL promoter (a temperature sensitive promoter), the tac promoter (a hybrid trp-lac promoter regulated by the lac repressor), the tryptophan promoter, and the bacteriophage T7 promoter.
- One other useful component of vectors used to practice this invention is a signal
- 20 sequence. This sequence is typically found immediately 5' to the nucleic acid encoding the peptide, and will thus be transcribed at the amino terminus of the fusion protein. However, in certain cases, the signal sequence has been demonstrated to be at positions other than 5' to the gene encoding the protein to be secreted. This sequence targets the protein to which it is attached across the inner membrane of the bacterial cell. The
- 25 DNA encoding the signal sequence can be obtained as a restriction endonuclease fragment from any nucleic acid encoding a peptide that has a signal sequence. Suitable prokaryotic signal sequences can be obtained from genes encoding, for example Lamb or OmpF (Wong, *et al.*, *Gene* 68:193, 1983), MalE, PhoA, OmpA and other genes. A

-19-

preferred prokaryotic signal sequence for practicing this invention is the *E. coli* heat-stable enterotoxin II (STII) signal sequence as described by Chang, *et al*, *Gene* 55:189, 1987.

Another useful component of the vectors used to practice this invention is a phenotypic
5 selection gene. Typical phenotypic selection genes are those encoding proteins that confer antibiotic resistance upon the host cell. By way of illustration, the ampicillin resistance gene (amp) and the tetracycline resistance gene (tet) are readily employed for this purpose.

Construction of suitable vectors comprising the aforementioned components as well as
10 the gene encoding the desired peptide are prepared using standard recombinant DNA procedures. Isolated DNA fragments to be combined to form the vector are cleaved, tailored, and ligated together in a specific order and orientation to generate the desired vector.

The DNA is prepared according to standard procedures (see Maniatis, *et al.*, *Molecular*
15 *Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, current edition, incorporated herein by reference). If the DNA fragment is to be ligated into a vector, the vector is at first linearized by cutting with the appropriate restriction endonucleases. The linearized vector can then be treated with alkaline phosphatase or calf intestinal phosphatase. The phosphatasing prevents self-ligation of
20 the vector during the ligation step.

After ligation, the vector with the heterologous gene now inserted is transformed into a suitable host cell. Suitable prokaryotic host cells include *E. coli* strain JM101, *E. coli* K12 strain 294 (ATCC number 31,446), *E. coli* strain W3110 (ATCC number 27,325), *E. coli* X1776 (ATCC number 31, 537), *E. coli* XL-1Blue (Stratagene), and *E. coli* B;
25 however, many other strains of *E. coli*, such as HB101, NM522, NM538, NM539 and many other species and genera of prokaryotes can be used as well. Besides the *E. coli* strains listed above, bacilli such as *Bacillus subtilis*, other enterobacteriaceae such as

-20-

Salmonella typhimurium or *Serratia marcesans* and various *Pseudomonas* species can all be used as hosts.

Transformation of prokaryotic cells is readily accomplished using calcium chloride or other methods well known to those skilled in the art. Electroporation (Neumann, *et al.*, 5 *EMBO J.* 1:841, 1982) also can be used to transform these cells. The transformed cells are selected by growth on an antibiotic, commonly tetracycline (tet) or ampicillin (amp), to which they are rendered resistant due to the presence of tet and/or amp resistance genes on the vector.

After selection of the transformed cells, these cells are grown in culture and the plasmid 10 DNA (or other vector with the foreign gene inserted) is then isolated. Plasmid DNA can be isolated using methods known in the art. This purified plasmid DNA is then analyzed by restriction mapping and/or DNA sequencing.

Following procedures outlined above, mammalian cell lines such as myeloma (P3-653), hybridoma (SP2/0), Chinese Hamster Ovary (CHO), Green monkey kidney (COSI) and 15 murine fibroblasts (L492) are suitable host cells for peptide expression. These "mammalian" vectors can include a promoter, an enhancer, a polyadenylation signal, signal sequences and genes encoding selectable markers such as geneticin (neomycin resistance), mycophenolic acid (xanthine guanine phosphoribosyl transferase) or histidinol (histidinol dehydrogenase).

20 Suitable promoters for use in mammalian host cells include, but are not limited to, Ig Kappa, Ig Gamma, Cytomegalovirus (CMV) immediate early, Rous Sarcoma Virus (RSV), Simian virus 40 (SV40) early, mouse mammary tumor (MMTV) virus and metallothionein. Suitable enhancers include, but are not limited to, Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy, CMV early and SV40. Suitable polyadenylation sequences include Ig Kappa, Ig Gamma 25 or SV40 large T antigen. Suitable signal sequences include Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy and human growth hormone (HGH).

-21-

When the vector is baculovirus, suitable promoters and enhancer sequences include, but are not limited to, AcMGPV polyhedrin, AcMGPV ETL and AcMGPV p10 sequences. One particularly suitable polyadenylation signal is the polyhedrin AcMGPV. Ig Kappa, Ig Heavy and AcMGPV are examples of suitable signal sequences. These vectors are
5 useful in the following insect cell lines, among others: SF9, SF21 and High 5.

Alternatively, the peptides can be expressed in yeast strains such as PS23-6A, W301-18A, LL20, D234-3, INVSC1, INVSC2, YJJ337. Promoter and enhancer sequences such as gal 1 and pEFT-1 are useful. Vra-4 also provides a suitable enhancer sequence. Sequences useful as functional "origins of replication" include ars1 and 2 μ circular
10 plasmid.

The invention includes antibodies that are immunoreactive with BGP-A or MGP-A peptides or fragments thereof. Antibodies which consist essentially of pooled monoclonal antibodies with different epitopic specificities, as well as distinct monoclonal antibody preparations are provided. Monoclonal antibodies are made from antigen
15 containing fragments of the protein by methods well known to those skilled in the art (Kohler, *et al.*, *Nature*, 256:495, 1975). Anti-BGP-A or MGP-A antibodies can be made by methods conventional in the art. For example, polyclonal antiserum can be raised in appropriate animals, such as rabbits, mice, or rats. BGP-A or MGP-A peptides, either synthetically obtained or naturally obtained, can be used to immunize the animal. The
20 immunogen can then be used to immunize animals by means well known to those skilled in the art. Serum samples are collected until the anti-BGP-A or MGP-A titer is appropriate. Various fractions of the antisera, such as IgG, can be isolated by means well known in the art. Alternatively, BGP-A or MGP-A immunogens can be used to obtain monoclonal antibodies, again by means well known in the art. (*See*, for example,
25 Harlow *et al.*, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Springs Harbor Laboratory, 1988.)

Anti-BGP-A or MGP-A antibodies can be used to detect the presence of BGP-A or MGP-A in biological samples, such as histological samples. An appropriate detectable

-22-

second antibody can be used to identify the primary antibody attached to the BGP-A or MGP-A by visualization. Means of detection include the use of radioactive nucleotides or enzyme substrates such as peroxidase. For example, anti-BGP-A was produced by standard methods and shown to stain bone marrow preparations from cattle (cytological sample). In particular, granulocytes (e.g., eosinophils) were stained heavily for BNP-A.

The term "antibody" as used in this invention includes intact molecules as well as fragments thereof, such as Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, and Fv that can bind the epitopic determinant. These antibody fragments retain some ability selectively to bind with its antigen or receptor and are defined as follows:

- 10 (1) Fab, the fragment that contains a monovalent antigen-binding fragment of an antibody molecule can be produced by digestion of whole antibody with the enzyme papain to yield an intact light chain and part of one heavy chain;
- (2) Fab', the fragment of an antibody molecule can be obtained by treating whole antibody with pepsin, followed by reduction, to yield an intact light chain and
15 part of the heavy chain; two Fab' fragments are obtained per antibody molecule;
- (3) (Fab')₂, the fragment of the antibody that can be obtained by treating whole antibody with the enzyme pepsin without subsequent reduction; F(ab')₂ is a dimer of two Fab' fragments held together by two disulfide bonds;
- (4) Fv, defined as a genetically engineered fragment containing the variable region
20 of the light chain and the variable region of the heavy chain expressed as two chains; and

-23-

- (5) Single chain antibody ("SCA"), defined as a genetically engineered molecule containing the variable region of the light chain, the variable region of the heavy chain, linked by a suitable peptide linker as a genetically fused single chain molecule.

- 5 Methods of making these fragments are known in the art. (See for example, Harlow and Lane, *Antibodies: A Laboratory Manual*, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, New York (current edition), incorporated herein by reference).

As used in this invention, the term "epitope" means any antigenic determinant on an antigen to which the paratope of an antibody binds. Epitopic determinants usually
10 consist of chemically active surface groupings of molecules such as amino acids or sugar side chains and usually have specific three dimensional structural characteristics, as well as specific charge characteristics.

If needed, polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies can be further purified, for example, by binding to and elution from a matrix to which the peptide or a peptide to which the
15 antibodies are raised is bound. Those of skill in the art will know of various techniques common in the immunology arts for purification and/or concentration of polyclonal antibodies, as well as monoclonal antibodies (See, e.g., Coligan, *et al.*, Unit 9, *Current Protocols in Immunology*, Wiley Interscience, current edition, incorporated by reference).

- 20 It is also possible to use the anti-idiotypic technology to produce monoclonal antibodies that mimic an epitope. For example, an anti-idiotypic monoclonal antibody made to a first monoclonal antibody will have a binding domain in the hypervariable region that is the "image" of the epitope bound by the first monoclonal antibody.

The phrase "purified antibody" means an antibody that is at least 60%, by weight, free
25 from proteins and naturally-occurring organic molecules with which it is naturally associated. Preferably, the preparation is at least 75%, more preferably 90%, and most

-24-

preferably at least 99%, by weight, an antibody, *e.g.*, an anti-BGP-A specific antibody. A purified antibody may be obtained, for example, by affinity chromatography using recombinantly-produced protein or conserved motif peptides and standard techniques. The invention can employ not only intact monoclonal or polyclonal antibodies, but also
5 an immunologically-active antibody fragment, such as a Fab, Fab' or (Fab')₂ fragments, or a genetically engineered Fv fragment (Ladner *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 4,946,788).

"Specifically binds" means an antibody that recognizes and binds a specified protein, *e.g.*, an anti-BGP-A, specific antibody or anti-MGP-A specific antibody, which does not substantially recognize and bind other molecules in a sample which naturally includes
10 protein.

It should be understood that the compositions of the present invention have activity against many microorganisms, such as fungi, bacteria (both gram positive and negative), and protozoa and viruses. Different compositions will have differing degrees of activities toward different organisms. The peptides of the present invention may also
15 be combined with other proteins to act as preservatives to protect the proteins against bacterial degradation. Alternatively, the subject peptides or compositions may be used as preservatives and disinfectants in many formulations, such as contact lens solutions, ointments, shampoos, medicaments, foods, and the like. The amount of peptide employed in the compositions may vary depending upon the nature of the other
20 components, how much protection is required and the intended use of the composition.

In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides administration of a therapeutic amount of an antimicrobial peptide of the invention. One or more of the peptides disclosed herein, may have utility as antifungal agents, either alone, or as lipid fascicle preparations. The latter approach has been used with success with the non-
25 peptide antifungal drug amphotericin. Specific applications would be dependent on the pathogen targeted. For example, *C. albicans*, the common cause of mucocutaneous fungal disease in AIDS patients, which is extremely susceptible to several β -defensins, might be controlled in these individuals more effectively by a BGP-A or MGP-A based

-25-

therapeutic or in combination with existing first line drugs. Similarly, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used therapeutically in veterinary medicine. One advantage of the therapeutic use of the present invention is that the peptides exhibit low immunogenicity.

5 BGP-A or MGP-A, either purified from natural sources or synthetic, can be administered to a subject in need of therapy by various means, including oral administration, preferably in a slow-release type formulation that will avoid release within the stomach. Alternatively, they can be administered through a nasal gastric incubation or transabdominal catheter. Individual species of BGP-A or MGP-A can be administered singly or a combination can be administered simultaneously or sequentially
10 and also with other antimicrobial compositions.

The invention further provides a pharmaceutical composition for treating a human bacterial or fungal infection that comprises the purified peptide of the invention in an amount effective to treat a human bacterial or fungal infection and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 The method of inhibiting the growth of bacteria may further include the addition of antibiotics for combination or synergistic therapy. The appropriate antibiotic administered will typically depend on the susceptibility of the bacteria such as whether the bacteria is gram negative or gram positive, and will be easily discernable by one of skill in the art. Examples of particular classes of antibiotics useful for synergistic
20 therapy with the peptides of the invention include aminoglycosides (e.g., tobramycin), penicillins (e.g., piperacillin), cephalosporins (e.g., ceftazidime), fluoroquinolones (e.g., ciprofloxacin), carbapenems (e.g., imipenem), tetracyclines and macrolides (e.g., erythromycin and clarithromycin). The method of inhibiting the growth of bacteria may further include the addition of antibiotics for combination or synergistic therapy. The
25 appropriate antibiotic administered will typically depend on the susceptibility of the bacteria such as whether the bacteria is gram negative or gram positive, and will be easily discernable by one of skill in the art. Further to the antibiotics listed above, typical antibiotics include aminoglycosides (amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin,

-26-

netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucetate/lactobionate/stearate), beta-lactams such as penicillins (e.g., penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin, azlocillin and piperacillin), or cephalosporins (e.g., cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, and cefsulodin). Other classes of antibiotics include carbapenems (e.g., imipenem), monobactams (e.g., aztreonam), quinolones (e.g., fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin and cinoxacin), tetracyclines (e.g., doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline), and glycopeptides (e.g., vancomycin, teicoplanin), for example. Other antibiotics include chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.

In certain embodiments of the invention, the treatment of the soluble proteins comprises size exclusion chromatography, ion-exchange chromatography, or reverse phase, high performance, liquid chromatography. It will be appreciated by one skilled in the art, however, that treatment of soluble proteins to purify peptides may be accomplished by many methods known to those skilled in the art, all of which are contemplated by this invention. Further, in one embodiment of the invention, the treatment of granulocytes to recover granules comprises density gradient centrifugation.

The invention also provides a composition that comprises the purified peptide in an amount effective to kill bacteria or fungi and a suitable carrier. Such composition may be used in numerous ways to combat bacteria or fungi, for example, in household or laboratory antimicrobial formulations using carriers well known in the art.

The compositions of the present invention can comprise the BGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, MGP-A, or MGP-A-Amide, either singly or in combination, incorporated in a physiologically-acceptable-carrier suitable for topical application. The compositions may contain from about 10 ug/ml to 2000 ug/ml, preferably 50 ug/ml to 500 ug/ml. The

-27-

nature of the carrier will vary depending on the intended area of application. For application to the skin, a cream or an ointment base is usually preferred with suitable bases including lanolin, Silvadene™ (Marion; particularly for the treatment of burns) Aquaphor™ (Duke Laboratories, South Norwalk, Conn.), and the like. It will also be possible to incorporate the BGP-A, BGP-A-Amide, MGP-A, or MGP-A-Amide peptides in natural and synthetic bandages and other wound dressings to provide for continuous exposure of a wound to the peptides. Aerosol applicators may also find use with the present invention.

Where the peptides are to be used as antimicrobial agents, they can be formulated in buffered aqueous media containing a variety of salts and buffers. The salts will for the most parts be alkali and alkaline earth halides, phosphates and sulfates, e.g., sodium chloride, potassium chloride or sodium sulfate. Various buffers may be used, such as citrate, phosphate, HEPES, Tris or the like to the extent that such buffers are physiologically acceptable to the host that is being treated.

Various excipients or other additives may be used, where the compounds are formulated as lyophilized powders, for subsequent use in solution. The excipients may include various polyols, inert powders or other extenders.

Depending on the nature of the formulation and the host, the subject compounds may be administered in a variety of ways. The formulations may be applied topically, by injection, e.g., intravenously, intraperitoneal, nasopharyngeal, etc.

In another aspect of the invention, compositions comprising the purified peptide of the invention in a microbicidal effective amount and a suitable carrier or pharmaceutical composition, or pharmaceutically acceptable carrier may additionally comprise a detergent. The addition of a detergent to such peptide compositions is useful to enhance the antibacterial, antiviral, or antifungal characteristics of the novel peptide of the invention. Although any suitable detergent may be used, the presently preferred detergent is a nonionic detergent, such as Tween 20 or 1% NP40.

-28-

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical formulation or composition for treating a human microbial, bacterial, viral, or fungal infection that comprises the purified peptide of the invention or a gene delivery and gene expression vector that can deliver an effective amount of peptide in an amount effective to treat a human microbial
5 bacterial, viral, or fungal infection incorporated into a pharmaceutically acceptable liposome or other delivery vehicle.

"Formulation" means a composition capable of gene delivery and gene expression, which can deliver a nucleotide sequence to, or directly into, a target cell whereupon the formulation containing the nucleotide sequence is incorporated on the cytoplasmic side
10 of the outermost membrane of the target cell and capable of achieving gene expression so that detectable levels of gene expression of the delivered nucleotide sequence are expressed in the target cell. More preferably, after delivery into the cytoplasmic side of the cell membrane the composition is subsequently transported, without undergoing endosomal or lytic degradation, into the nucleus of the target cell in a functional state
15 capable of achieving gene expression so that detectable levels of gene expression of the delivered nucleotide sequence are expressed in the target cell. Expression levels of the gene or nucleotide sequence inside the target cell can provide gene expression for a duration of time and in an amount such that the nucleotide product therein can provide a biologically beneficially effective amount of a gene product or in such an amount as
20 to provide a functionally beneficial biological effect. As used herein, the term formulation can refer to, but is not limited by (either explicitly or implicitly) the following examples: (1) liposome or liposome reagents or liposomal compositions either cationic, anionic or neutral in net character and net charge; (2) DNA, nucleic acid or a nucleic acid expression vector ionically complexed with a polycation/s and a ligand/s
25 such that after attachment of the [DNA + Polycation + Ligand] composition to a cell surface receptor on a target cell via the ligand, the [DNA + Polycation + Ligand] composition can be endocytosed into the target cell and the DNA is subsequently decoupled from the ligand and polycation and delivered to the cell nucleus in a functional condition for subsequent expression. Various alterations in the composition
30 can be envisioned by those of ordinary skill in the art such as including peptide

-29-

sequences that (a) protect the composition from endosomal lysis after incorporation into the target cell by allowing the composition to leave the lysosomal vesicle, or (b) which act as a nuclear targeting agent, chaperoning the nucleic acid through the pores of the nuclear envelope and into the nucleus of the cell. Similar reagents, which have been

5 previously described, are the asialoglycoprotein-polylysine conjugations (Wu *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 263:14621, 1988; Wu *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 264:16985, 1989); (3) naked nucleic acid; (4) compacted nucleic acid or a compacted reagent; or (5) plasmid or naked DNA that can be microinjected (Wolff *et al.*, *Science* 247:1465, 1990); (6)

10 nucleic acid in a viral or retroviral vector composition; and (7) colloidal dispersions (Felgner *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84:7413, 1987; Ono *et al.*, *Neuroscience Lett.* 117:259, 1990; Brigham *et al.*, *Am. J. Med. Sci.* 298:278, 1989; Staubinger and Papahadjopoulos, *Meth. Enz.* 101:512, 1983). One of ordinary skill in the art will recognize that other compositions for the delivery of nucleotide sequences to target cells may be envisioned.

15 It will be readily understood by those skilled in the art that any suitable pharmaceutically acceptable liposome may be used as a vehicle for the peptide of the present invention. Such liposomal compositions have activity against many microorganisms similar to the activity of other compositions of this invention discussed in more detail above. Additionally, these compositions may be administered in a variety

20 of conventional and well-known ways as is also discussed in greater detail above.

"Therapeutically effective" as used herein, refers to an amount of formulation, composition, or reagent in a pharmaceutical acceptable carrier that is of sufficient quantity to ameliorate the state of the patient or animal so treated. "Ameliorate" refers to a lessening of the detrimental effect of the disease state or disorder in the recipient

25 of the therapy. The subject of the invention is preferably a human, however, it can be envisioned that any animal can be treated in the method of the instant invention. The term "modulate" means enhance, inhibit, alter, or modify the expression or function of antimicrobial activity in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

-30-

Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier preparations for administration include sterile or aqueous or non-aqueous solutions, suspensions, and emulsions. Examples of non-aqueous solvents are propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, vegetable oils such as olive oil, and injectable organic esters such as ethyl oleate. Aqueous carriers include water, 5 alcoholic/aqueous solutions, emulsions or suspensions, including saline and buffered media. Parenteral vehicles include sodium chloride solution, Ringer's dextrose, dextrose and sodium chloride, lactated Ringer's, or fixed oils. The active therapeutic ingredient is often mixed with excipients that are pharmaceutically acceptable and compatible with the active ingredient. Suitable excipients include water, saline, dextrose, glycerol and 10 ethanol, or combinations thereof. Intravenous vehicles include fluid and nutrient replenishers, electrolyte replenishers, such as those based on Ringer's dextrose, and the like. Preservatives and other additives may also be present such as, for example, antimicrobial, antioxidants, chelating agents, and inert gases and the like.

Another therapeutic approach included within the invention involves direct 15 administration of reagents or compositions by any conventional administration techniques (for example but not restricted to local injection, inhalation, or administered systemically), to the subject with a microbial, bacterial, viral or fungal disorder. The reagent, formulation or composition may also be targeted to specific cells or receptors by any of the methods described herein. The actual dosage of reagent, formulation or 20 composition that modulates a microbial, bacterial, viral or fungal disorder depends on many factors, including the size and health of an organism, however one of ordinary skill in the art can use the following teachings describing the methods and techniques for determining clinical dosages (Spilker B., *Guide to Clinical Studies and Developing Protocols*, Raven Press Books, Ltd., New York, 1984, pp. 7-13, 54-60; 25 Spilker B., *Guide to Clinical Trials*, Raven Press, Ltd., New York, 1991, pp. 93-101; Craig C., and R. Stitzel, eds., *Modern Pharmacology*, 2d ed., Little, Brown and Co., Boston, 1986, pp. 127-33; T. Speight, ed., *Avery's Drug Treatment: Principles and Practice of Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 3d ed., Williams and Wilkins, Baltimore, 1987, pp. 50-56; R. Tallarida, R. Raffa and P. McGonigle, *Principles in* 30 *General Pharmacology*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1988, pp. 18-20) to determine the

appropriate dosage to use; but, generally, in the range of about 0.1 mg/kg to 1000 mg/kg, more specifically between about 1.0 mg/kg and 500 mg/kg, and preferably from about 10 mg/kg and 100 mg/kg inclusive final concentration are administered per day to an adult in any pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier.

5 The peptides of the present invention can also be used to treat an LPS associated disorder. With reference to an LPS associated disorder, the term "therapeutically effective amount" as used herein for treatment of an LPS associated disorder such as endotoxemia or sepsis refers to the amount of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide sufficient to decrease the subject's response to LPS and decrease the symptoms of an LPS associated
10 disorder, such as sepsis. The term "therapeutically effective" therefore includes that the amount of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide sufficient to prevent, and preferably reduce by at least 50%, and more preferably sufficient to reduce by 90%, a clinically significant increase in the plasma level of LPS. The dosage ranges for the administration of BGP-A or MGP-A peptide are those large enough to produce the desired effect. Generally,
15 the dosage will vary with the age, condition, sex, and extent of the infection with bacteria or other agent as described above, in the patient and can be determined by one skilled in the art. The dosage can be adjusted by the individual physician in the event of any contraindications. In any event, the effectiveness of treatment can be determined by monitoring the level of LPS or LPS associated molecules, such as tumor necrosis
20 factor (TNF), in a patient. A decrease in serum LPS and TNF levels correlates positively with amelioration of the LPS associated disorder.

In a further embodiment, the present invention may be used as a food preservative or in treating food products to eliminate potential pathogens. The latter use might be targeted to the fish and poultry industries that have serious problems with enteric
25 pathogens which cause severe human disease. In another embodiment, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used as disinfectants, for use in any product that must remain microbial free. In a further embodiment, BGP-A or MGP-A may be used as antimicrobials for food crops, either as agents to reduce post harvest spoilage, or expressed transgenically to enhance host resistance. Because of the antibiotic, antimicrobial, and antiviral properties
30 of the peptides, they may also be used as preservatives or sterillants of materials

-32-

- susceptible to microbial or viral contamination. The BGP-A or MGP-A peptides of the invention can be utilized as broad spectrum antimicrobial agents directed toward various specific applications. Such applications include use of the peptides as preservatives in processed foods (organisms including Salmonella, Yersinia, Shigella), either alone or in combination with antibacterial food additives such as lysozymes; as a topical agent (Pseudomonas, Streptococcus) and to kill odor producing microbes (Micrococci). The relative effectiveness of the peptides of the invention for the applications described can be readily determined by one of skill in the art by determining the sensitivity of any organism to one of the peptides.
- 10 It is also possible to incorporate the peptides on devices or immaterial objects where microbial growth is undesirable as a method of microbicidal inhibition or microbistatic inhibition of microbial growth in an environment capable of sustaining microbial growth by administering to the devices or immaterial objects a microbicidal or microbistatical effective amount of peptide. Such devices or immaterial objects include, but are not
- 15 limited to, linens, cloth, plastics, implantable devices (e.g., heart pacemakers, surgical stents), surfaces or storage containers. Coating may be achieved by nonspecific absorption or covalent attachment.

EXAMPLES

- The following examples are intended to illustrate but not admitted to limit the invention in any manner, shape, or form (either explicitly or implicitly), nor should they be so construed. While they are typical of those that might be used, other procedures, methodologies, or techniques known to those skilled in the art may be used alternatively.
- 20

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Bovine neutrophils. Polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMN) were purified from 1 L batches of fresh citrated bovine blood. Following sedimentation at 40 minutes at 700 x g and 37° C, the erythrocyte column was subjected to 7 seconds of hypotonic lysis, after which isotonicity was restored using 3x phosphate buffered saline. The leukocyte-rich suspension was then sedimented at 120 x g (4° C, 15 minutes). Residual erythrocytes were lysed by repeating this procedure 1 or 2 times. Aliquots were removed for quantitation by hemocytometry and differential counts. Preparations obtained by this procedure contained an average of 4×10^9 cells per L of whole blood of which $97 \pm 3\%$ were neutrophils. Preparations were treated with 2 mM diisopropylfluorophosphate (DFP). Neutrophil preparations were then cooled to 4° C for 20 minutes and disrupted by nitrogen cavitation in a Parr bomb (Borregaard, N., *et al.*, *J. Cell Biol.* 8 97:52-61, 1983). The cavitate was centrifuged at 800 x g for 10 minutes at 4° C, and the granule-containing supernatant was collected. Granules were harvested by centrifugation at 27,000 x G for 40 minutes and stored at -80° C.

PMN Granule extracts. Preparations of frozen granules from $1-5 \times 10^{10}$ PMN were extracted with 5 ml of ice cold 10% acetic acid per 1×10^9 cell equivalents. After stirring on ice for 18 hours, the suspension was clarified by centrifugation at 27,000 x G for 20 minutes at 4° C and the supernatants were lyophilized and stored at -70° C.

Size exclusion chromatography. Lyophilized granule extract was dissolved in 10% acetic acid at a concentration of ca. 1×10^9 cell equivalents per ml, clarified by centrifugation, and loaded onto a 4.8 x 110 cm column of BioGel P-60 equilibrated in 5% acetic acid. The column was run at 8° C with an elution rate of 2 cm per hour, and 15 ml fractions were collected with continuous monitoring at 280 nm.

Reversed phase HPLC (RP-HPLC). Low molecular weight components eluting from the size exclusion column were further resolved by RP-HPLC on a Waters 510 binary system on a 1 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column. Water and acetonitrile containing 0.1%

-34-

trifluoroacetic acid (TFA) or 0.13% heptafluorobutyric acid (HFBA) were used for gradient elution. Purified peptides were lyophilized, dissolved in 0.01% acetic acid at 100 - 500 µg/ml, and stored at -70° C.

Polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis. Sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS; 14) and acid-urea
5 (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Anal. Biochem.* 155:270-274, 1986) gel electrophoresis were used to the estimate molecular mass and/or purity of protein preparations as previously described (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *Infect. Immun.* 45:150-154, 1984).

Amino acid analysis. The amino acid composition of each peptide was determined on
6 N HCl hydrolysates (2 h, 150° C) of native and performic acid-oxidized, or reduced
10 and alkylated samples (Bidlemeier, B.A., *et al.*, *J. Chromatogr.* 336:93-104, 1984). Tryptophan content was determined by sequence analysis and by spectroscopic measurement on a Beckman DU 60 spectrophotometer by the method of Edelhoch (Edelhock, H., *Biochem.* 6:1948-1954).

Sequence Analysis. For sequence analysis, purified BGP-A was subjected to automated
15 Edman sequence analysis. Automated sequence analysis was performed on an Applied Biosystems 475A instrument configured with on-line PTH-amino acid analysis. The sequence was confirmed by comparing the primary structure with the amino acid composition, and cDNA cloning.

Peptide synthesis. BGP-A and BGP-A-amide were synthesized at the 0.4 mmol scale
20 on a Millipore 9050 automated synthesizer by standard Fmoc/BOP/HOBt/NMM activation with a 30 minute coupling time. The starting resin for the free acid peptide was Fmoc-L-Valine-PEG-PS (Millipore), and for peptide amide the starting resin was Fmoc-PAL-PEG-PS (Barany, G., *et al.*, *Intercept*, R. Epton, Andover, England, 1992, pp.29-38; Van Abel, R.J., *et al.*, *Int. J. Peptide Protein Applicant respectfully requests*
25 *withdrawal of the rejection.* 45:401-409, 1995). Side chain protecting groups were Pmc for arginine, trityl for glutamine and histidine, tBoc for lysine and tBu for tyrosine. Fmoc deprotection was with 2% piperidine and 2% DBU for 15 minutes. Tryptophan

-35-

and isoleucine were double coupled. Following chain assembly the resin was cleaved and deprotected with reagent K (82.5% TFA, 5% phenol, 5% thioanisole, 5% water and 2.5% ethanedithiol) for 4 hours. The peptide solution was made 30% in acetic acid, extracted with dichloromethane, and the aqueous phase was lyophilized. Purification
5 was performed by RP-HPLC on a 22.5 x 250 mm preparative Vydak C-18 column using 0.1% TFA and a linear acetonitrile gradient developed at 0.33% per minute. The purified peptides were analyzed by amino acid analysis, acid-urea gel electrophoresis and analytical RP-HPLC.

cDNA isolation and characterization. BGP-A: Total RNA was isolated from bovine
10 bone marrow using the acid guanidinium thiocyanate-phenol extraction method of Chomczynski and Sacchi (Chomczynski, P., *et al.*, *Analyt. Biochem.* 162:156-159, 1987). Bone marrow total RNA (1 mg) was then used with avian reverse transcriptase to synthesize first strand cDNA according to the manufacturer's protocol (5'-RACE System; Life Technologies; Gaithersburg, MD). This cDNA was used as a template for
15 3'-RACE, in which a degenerate gene specific primer was paired with an oligo (dT)₁₅-anchor primer to generate the 3'-end of the BGP-A cDNA. PCR amplification was carried out using the following cycling parameters: 95 °C, 1 minutes; 55 °C, 1 minutes; 72 °C, 1 minutes for 35 cycles. 5'-RACE was carried out in a similar fashion with the exception that first strand cDNA was tailed using terminal transferase and different gene
20 specific and anchor primers were used. PCR-amplified RACE products were subcloned and sequenced as described previously (Yount, N.Y., *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 155:4476-4484, 1995). Once the 5'- and 3'-ends of the BGP-A cDNA were known, a PCR product corresponding to the full length BGP-A sequence was generated and characterized by sequence analysis.

25 Murine bone marrow total RNA and first strand cDNA were generated as for BGP-A. Two gene specific primers were then used to PCR amplify a sequence corresponding to a BGP-A homolog. This sequence was subcloned and sequenced as described above.

Antimicrobial assay. *E. coli* ML35, *S. aureus* 502A, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans* were used as target organisms in a microbicidal suspension assay as previously described (Selsted, M.E., *Genetic Engineering: Principles and Methods*, J.K. Setlow, Plenum Press, New York, 1993, pp. 131-147).

5 EXAMPLE 1

PURIFICATION OF BGP-A

- Previous electrophoretic analyses of the acid-soluble proteins of bovine PMN granules demonstrated that these preparations contain a complex mixture of proteins varying in size from 1,000 to 200,000 D (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295, 10 1992). Acetic acid extract of a granule-enriched fraction from 1.3×10^{10} neutrophils was chromatographed on a Bio-Gel P-60 column as described above in the section titled, "Materials and Methods." Approximately 2×10^{10} cell equivalents of acid solubilized granule protein was fractionated on a BioGel P-60 column and antibacterial activity in pooled eluent fractions was assayed as described in the "Materials and Methods."
- 15 Fractions corresponding to Peak E were lyophilized and subjected to further purification by RP-HPLC. Each peak (A-F in Fig. 1A) contained bactericidal activity against *S. aureus* and *E. coli*. Peak F was predominantly comprising indolicidin, a novel thirteen residue antibiotic peptide amide (Selsted, M.E., *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 267:4292-4295), and Peak E contained at least 13 β -defensins.
- 20 Peak E fractions were combined and further purified by HPLC. One tenth of the pooled fractions from Peak E (Fig. 1a) was loaded on a 1 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column equilibrated in 0.1% TFA/water (solvent A) at a flow rate of 3.0 ml/min. A linear gradient of acetonitrile (20% to 45%) containing 0.1% TFA (solvent B) was applied at the rate of 0.33% per min. Fractions were collected using the peak cutting mode of a
- 25 Pharmacia Frac-200 fraction collector. The initial RP-HPLC purification of Peak E fractions yielded a complex chromatogram (Fig. 1B) in which most peaks contained two

or more peptides as determined by acid-urea PAGE. However, BGP-A was eluted as an isolated, virtually pure peak (indicated by the asterisk symbol "*" in Fig. 1B) early in the RP-HPLC chromatogram. Final purification (Fig. 2) was obtained by a second round of RP-HPLC.

5 EXAMPLE 2

AMINO ACID AND SEQUENCE ANALYSIS OF BGP-A

The composition of BGP-A was established by amino acid analysis (Figure 2). Approximately 5 µg of purified BGP-A was injected onto a 0.4 x 25 cm Vydac C-18 column run at a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min. Solvents are the same as described above for Figure 1B. Gradient conditions: 10% B to 50% B in 25 min. *B. Acid-urea gel of purified BGP-A.* A 2 µg sample of purified BGP-A was loaded onto a 12.5% acid-urea polyacrylamide gel that was electrophoresed for 4 hours at 250 V (lane 2). A 100 µg sample of crude acid extract from bovine neutrophil granules (lane 1) was run in parallel. Staining was with Coomassie Blue containing 15% formalin. Absorbance scans of BGP-A were carried out between 300 and 200 nm, providing an accurate estimate of tyrosine and tryptophan content (Edelhoch, H., *Biochem.* 6:1948-1954, 1967). Automated sequence analysis was carried out on 2 nmol of BGP-A. Repetitive sequencing yields averaged ≥90 percent, allowing for unambiguous assignment of all thirteen residues. The complete amino acid sequence of BGP-A is:

20 Tyr-Lys-Ile-Ile-Gln-Gln-Trp-Pro-His-Tyr-Arg-Arg-Val (SEQ ID NO: 5; Fig. 6)

A protein sequence search using the BLAST algorithm (Altschul, S.F., *et al.*, *J. Molec. Biol.* 215:403-410, 1990) revealed no similar amino acid sequences among the GenBank Data base.

EXAMPLE 3

25 SYNTHESIS OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE

The two synthetic BGP-A forms were assembled as N^α-Fmoc protected amino acids. (The acid-urea gel patterns of the purified peptides are shown in Fig. 3.) A 12.5% acid-urea gel was loaded with 2-4 µg of natural BGP-A (Fig. 3, lane 1), synthetic BGP-A (Fig. 3, lane 2) or synthetic BGP-A-amide (Fig. 3, lane 3). Staining was as described

-38-

for Fig. 2. The yields of the HPLC-purified material were 31.4% for the free acid form, and 22.1% for the carboxamidated form.

EXAMPLE 4

ISOLATION AND SEQUENCING OF BGP-A cDNA CLONES

- 5 The full length BGP-A cDNA is 688 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 2) and predicts a 21 kD precursor composed of 190 residues (Fig. 4; SEQ ID NO: 3). Within the BGP-A precursor, 11 of the first 21 residues are hydrophobic and predict a signal peptide (Von Heijne, G., *Eur. J. Biochem.* 133:17-21, 1983). The signal peptide domain is followed by an intervening propeptide region containing 156 residues. The final 13
10 residues of the precursor correspond to the mature BGP-A peptide sequence (SEQ ID NO: 6).

- To determine if the BGP-A precursor was homologous to other nucleotide or protein sequences, a Blast search of the GenBank database was carried out. Some homology between the BGP-A sequence and a partial cDNA sequence isolated from murine
15 adenocarcinoma of unknown tissue origin was identified. Using consensus primers derived from the murine adenocarcinoma and BGP-A sequences, a cDNA encoding a BGP-A like sequence from mouse bone marrow (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5) was isolated. This full-length cDNA is 679 nucleotides in length (SEQ ID NO: 4) and predicts a precursor comprising signal pro-peptide domains similar to those described for BGP-A
20 (Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5). The mature peptide sequence predicted by the murine cDNA is identical to BGP-A at 7 of 13 residues (Fig. 6; SEQ ID NO: 7). Based on this similarity, this sequence isolated from murine bone marrow cDNA is designated as mouse granulocyte peptide A (MGP-A; Fig. 5; SEQ ID NO: 5 and Fig. 6, SEQ ID NO: 7).

EXAMPLE 5**ANTIMICROBIAL ACTIVITY OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE.**

Natural and synthetic BGP-A and synthetic BGP-A-amide were tested for their microbicidal activities against *S. aureus* 502A, *E. coli* ML35, *C. albicans*, and *C. neoformans*. Using a microbicidal suspension assay (Selsted, M.E., *Genetic Engineering: Principles and Methods*, J.K. Setlow, Plenum Press, New York, 1993, pp.131-147), each peptide was tested against the four test organisms with peptide concentrations ranging from 5-100 µg/ml. The bactericidal and fungicidal activities of the three peptide preparations were assessed using a standard microbicidal assay. Organisms were grown to mid-log phase, harvested, and suspended to 2×10^7 CFU/ml. The incubation mixture contained $1-2 \times 10^6$ CFU/ml, 10 mM sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.4, and peptide at concentrations up to 100 µg/ml. After 1 h of incubation at 37 C (4 h incubations for *C. neoformans*), serial 10-fold dilutions were plated on Trypticase Soy Agar (bacteria) or *S. abaroud* dextrose agar (fungi), and incubated for 24-48 h at 37 C. Killing was quantitated by colony counting, and plotted as a function of peptide concentration in the incubation.

The data, presented in Figure 7, reveal the dose-dependent activity of each peptide as measured by the reduction in colony forming units after a 1 or 4 hour incubation interval. These data demonstrate 1) that BGP-A was microbicidal against each organism; 2) that synthetic BGP-A and natural BGP-A were equal in potency, suggesting that the activity of the natural peptide was attributable to the purified compound and not to a contaminant; and 3) that the carboxamidated form of BGP-A is much more potent against most of the targets than is the free-carboxyl form.

The mature peptide was microbicidal *in vitro* against representative Gram positive and Gram negative bacteria, and yeast forms of two fungi. The antimicrobial activity of the natural peptide was validated by demonstration that synthetic BGP-A had equivalent killing activity.

-40-

EXAMPLE 6**ACTIVITY OF BGP-A AND BGP-A-AMIDE TO TREAT AN LPS DISORDER**

The effect of the BGP, MGP, BGP-A and MGP-A peptides of the invention on LPS-induced TNF in macrophages can be determined by those in the art, according to standard methods. For example, macrophage cells are grown by seeding cells into a cell culture flask and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ for 1 week. Macrophage cell media [(Dulbecco's Modified Eagle Medium with Hepes buffer 450 ml; 2.4mM L-glutamine 3ml (400mM); Pen/Strep 3ml (10⁴U/ml of Pen, 1 mg/ml strep); and 10% heat inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS) 50ml)] is then completely removed from flasks.

10 10 mls of cell dissociation solution (Sigma) is added to each flask and incubated at 37°C for 10 minutes. Cells are removed from flasks, diluted in macrophage cell media and centrifuged for approximately six minutes. The cell pellet is resuspended in 5ml of media/ flask used. 100µl cell suspension is removed and added to 400µl of trypan blue and cells are counted using a hemocytometer. The cell suspension is diluted to 1 x 10⁶

15 cells / ml and 1 ml of suspension is added per well of a 24 well plate. The 24 well plates are incubated at 37°C, 5% CO₂ overnight.

After an overnight incubation, the media is aspirated from all the wells. 100µl of Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is added at 100ng/100µl. BGP-A and MGP-A is added at the desired concentration/100µl to specified wells. Macrophage cell media is added to a

20 final volume of 1 ml/well. The plates are incubated for six hours at 37°C, 5% CO₂. The supernatant is removed from the wells and stored overnight at 4°C. For those wells in which whole bacteria is added directly to the wells, the supernatant is centrifuged in 0.2µm filter eppendorf tubes for 5 minutes.

The supernatants are then used in cell cytotoxic L929 assay. The samples are

25 transferred to 96 well plates. 50µl of TNF media is added to all the wells in all the plates except to those wells in the first row. 10µl of murine TNF standard (20ng/ml) and 90µl of TNF media is added in duplicate to the plate and diluted 1:2 down the plate to the second to last row. Test samples (75µl), comprising the supernatants from the

-41-

macrophage cell assays, are added to separate rows in duplicate and diluted 1:3 to the second to last rows.

TNF-sensitive L929 mouse fibroblast cells are grown by seeding 10^6 cells into a 162cm^2 cell culture flask and left to grow for 1 week. L929 cells are removed from the flask with 10mls of trypsin-EDTA/flask and incubated 3-5 minutes. Cell suspension is diluted and centrifuged for 6 minutes. The pellet is resuspended in 5 mls of fresh L929 media/flask and counted (same as macrophage cells). Cell suspension is diluted to 10^6 cells/ml. 100 μl is used to inoculate each well of the 96 well plates with the supernatants. (L929 Growth Media is the same as macrophage cell media except instead of FBS, 50 mls of 10% heat inactivated horse serum is utilized; TNF Assay Media is the same as macrophage cell media except 4 $\mu\text{g/ml}$ Actinomycin D is added.)

The plates are incubated at 37°C at 5% CO_2 for 2 days. The media is then aspirated and replaced with 100 μl of the dye MTT (0.5mg/ml) in modified Eagle Medium without phenol red. The plates are then incubated at 37°C at 5% CO_2 for 3 hours. The dye is then removed and replaced with 100 μl of absolute ethanol. The plates are left at room temperature for 10 - 15 minutes to dissolve the formazan dye crystals.

The plates are read at 570nm in a ELISA plate reader with 690nm reference filter. One unit of TNF activity is defined as the amount required to kill 50% of the L929 cells. The TNF level in Units per ml therefore is the reciprocal of the dilution which led to a 50% killing of L929 cells.

It is to be understood that, while the invention has been described with reference to the above detailed description, the foregoing description is intended to illustrate, but not to limit, the scope of the invention. Other aspects, advantages, and modifications of the invention are within the scope of the following claims. All publications, patent applications, patents, and other references mentioned herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-42-

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. An isolated antimicrobial peptide comprising an amino acid sequence YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), wherein X can be any amino acid.
- 5 2. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the amino acid sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 6.
3. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the amino acid sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 7.
4. The peptide of any of claims 1-3, wherein the peptide comprises at least
10 one modified amino acid.
5. The peptide of claim 4, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
6. The peptide of claim 1, wherein the peptide exhibits antimicrobial activity against microorganisms selected from the group consisting of
15 gram positive bacteria, gram negative bacteria, fungi and viruses.
7. The peptide of claim 6, wherein the organism is selected from the group consisting of: *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *C. albicans*, *S. typhimurium*, and *C. neoformans*.
8. An isolated antimicrobial polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as
20 set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3 or functional fragments thereof.

-43-

9. An isolated antimicrobial polypeptide having an amino acid sequence as set forth in SEQ ID NO: 5 or functional fragments thereof.
10. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 1 or functional fragments thereof.
- 5 11. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 6 or functional fragments thereof.
12. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the peptide of SEQ ID NO: 7 or functional fragments thereof.
- 10 13. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO: 3 or functional fragments thereof.
14. An isolated nucleic acid sequence encoding the polypeptide of SEQ ID NO: 5 or functional fragments thereof.

15. The polynucleotide of claims 13 or 14, wherein such sequence is characterized by:
- a) nucleotide sequences which hybridize under stringent conditions with the polynucleotide of claim 13 or 14;
 - b) nucleotide sequences which encode peptides with conservative variations from the amino acid sequences encoded by the DNA of claim 13 or 14;
 - c) the nucleotide sequence of claim 13 or 14, wherein T is U;
 - d) functional fragments of a), b), or c) which encode peptides which retain the biological activity of BGP-A, or MGP-A; and
 - e) degenerate nucleotide sequences encoding the amino acid sequence as encoded by any of a), b), c) or d).
16. An antibody that binds to SEQ ID NO: 1.
17. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody is monoclonal.
18. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody is polyclonal.
- 20 19. A method of microbicidal or microbistatic inhibition in an environment capable of sustaining microbial growth comprising administering to the environment a microbicidal or microbistatical effective amount of a peptide having an amino acid sequence of YXXIQXWXHYR (SEQ ID NO: 1), wherein X can be any amino acid.

-45-

20. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 6.
21. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 7.
- 5 22. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 3, or functional fragments thereof.
23. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide has the amino acid sequence set forth in SEQ ID NO: 5, or functional fragments thereof.
24. The method of claim 19, further comprising at least one additional
10 antimicrobial composition.
25. The method of claim 24, wherein the antimicrobial composition is selected from the group consisting of an antibiotic, an antifungal, and an antiviral agent.
26. The method of claim 25, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from
15 a class of antibiotic agents selected from the group consisting of aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, quinolones, tetracyclines, glycopeptides, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.
27. The method of claim 26, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from the
20 group consisting of amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, netilmicin, tobramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucaptate/lactobionate/stearate, penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin,

-46-

- azlocillin, piperacillin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, imipenem, aztreonam, fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, cinoxacin, doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline, vancomycin, and teicoplanin.
- 5
28. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide comprises at least one modified amino acid.
- 10 29. The method of claim 28, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
30. The method of claim 19, wherein the peptide is an effective microbicidal or microbistatic agent against microorganisms selected from the group consisting of gram positive bacteria, gram negative bacteria, fungi and viruses.
- 15
31. The peptide of claim 30, wherein the organism is selected from the group consisting of: *S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *C. albicans*, *S. typhimurium*, and *C. neoformans*.
32. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is an organism.
- 20 33. The method of claim 32, wherein the environment is an animal.
34. The method of claim 32, wherein the environment is a human.
35. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is a food or food product.

-47-

36. The method of claim 19, wherein the environment is a water supply.
37. A method of inhibiting a lipopolysaccharide (LPS) associated disorder in a subject having, or at risk of having, such a disorder, comprising administering to the subject a therapeutically effective amount of a peptide having an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of: SEQ ID NO: 1; SEQ ID NO: 3, SEQ ID NO: 5, SEQ ID NO: 6 and SEQ ID NO: 7 or functional fragments thereof.
38. The method of claim 37, further comprising at least one additional antimicrobial composition.
39. The method of claim 38, wherein the antimicrobial composition is selected from the group consisting of an antibiotic, an antifungal, and an antiviral agent.
40. The method of claim 39, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from a class of antibiotic agents selected from the group consisting of aminoglycosides, penicillins, cephalosporins, carbapenems, monobactams, quinolones, tetracyclines, glycopeptides, chloramphenicol, clindamycin, trimethoprim, sulfamethoxazole, nitrofurantoin, rifampin and mupirocin.

-48-

41. The method of claim 40, wherein the antibiotic agent is selected from the group consisting of amikacin, gentamicin, kanamycin, netilmicin, t-obramycin, streptomycin, azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, erythromycin estolate/ethylsuccinate/glucaptate/lactobionate/stearate, 5 penicillin G, penicillin V, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, cloxacillin, dicloxacillin, ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, carbenicillin, mezlocillin, azlocillin, piperacillin, cephalothin, cefazolin, cefaclor, cefamandole, cefoxitin, cefuroxime, cefonicid, cefmetazole, cefotetan, cefprozil, loracarbef, cefetamet, cefoperazone, cefotaxime, ceftizoxime, ceftriaxone, 10 ceftazidime, cefepime, cefixime, cefpodoxime, cefsulodin, imipenem, aztreonam, fleroxacin, nalidixic acid, norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin, ofloxacin, enoxacin, lomefloxacin, cinoxacin, doxycycline, minocycline, tetracycline, vancomycin, and teicoplanin.
42. The method of claim 37, wherein the peptide comprises at least one 15 modified amino acid.
43. The method of claim 42, wherein the modified amino acid comprises a carboxy terminal amide.
44. A method of inhibiting protozoan growth comprising contacting a 20 protozoan with an inhibitory effective amount of a peptide selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO: 1, 6 and 7.

1/5

FIG. 1A

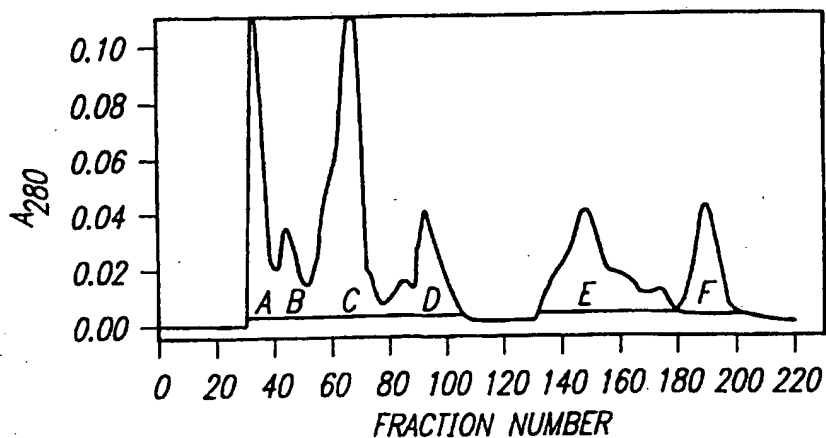


FIG. 1B

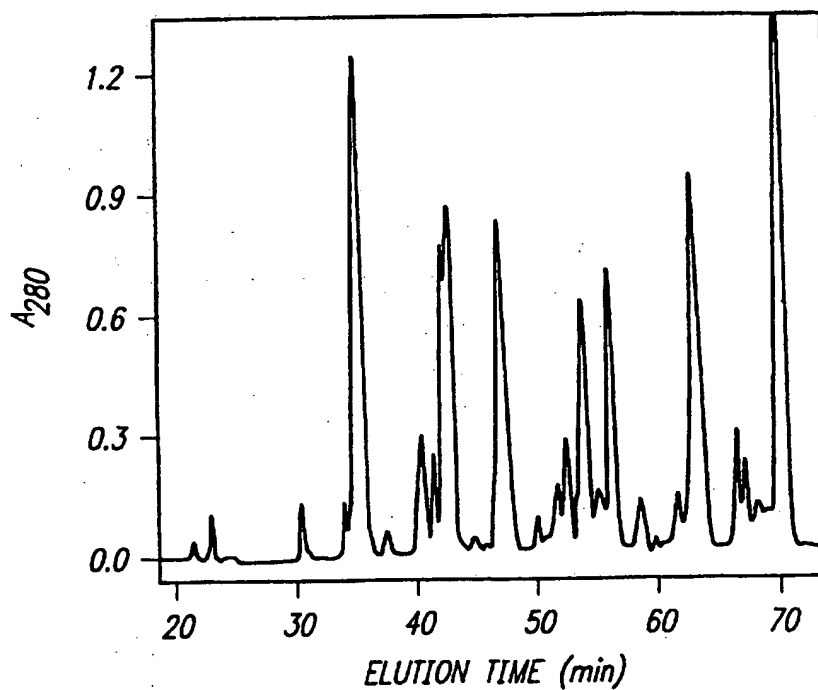


FIG. 6

BNP-A
MNP-A



13
12

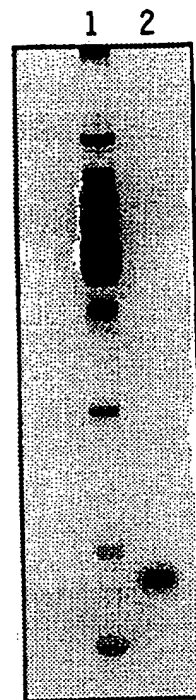
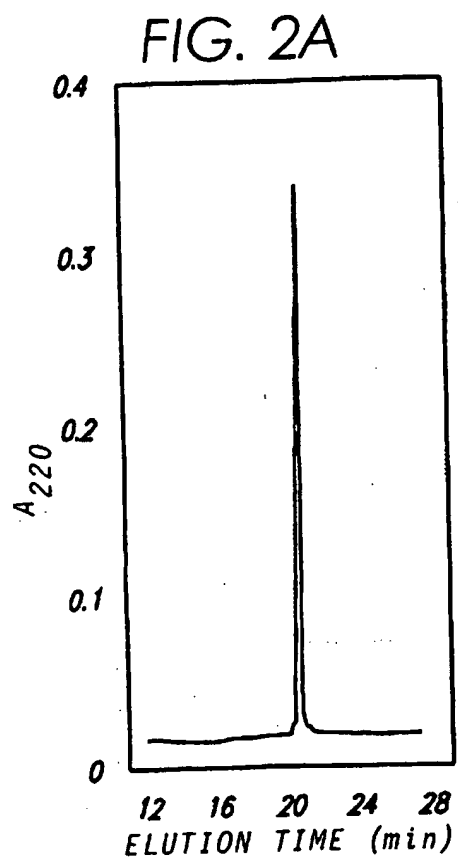
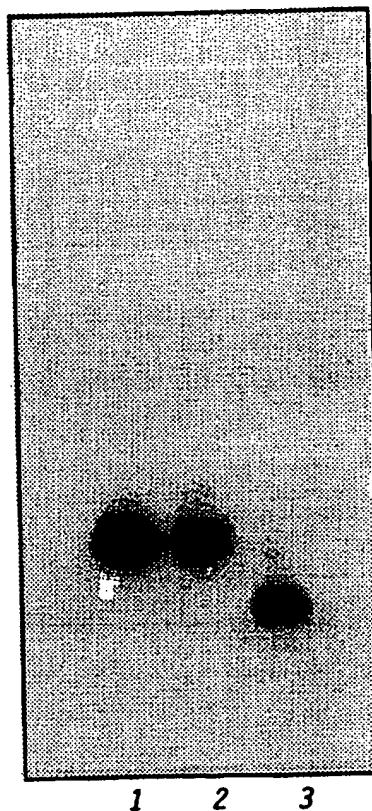


FIG. 2B

FIG. 3



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 25)

3/5

AGTCTCCGCGTGTCTTTCTGCCTGCCATGTCTCGCCGCTACACACCGC	50
M S R R Y T P	
TCGCCTGGGTCTCTCTCGCCCTCCTGGGCCTCGGGGCGGCTCAAGACTGC	100
L A W V L L A L L G L G A A Q D C	
GGCAGCATCGTGTCCCGCGGAAAGTGGGGCGCCCTGGCATCCAAGTGCAG	150
G S I V S R G K W G A L A S K C S	
CCAGAGGCTAAGACAGCCTGTGCGCTACGTGGTGGTGTGCGACACGGCGG	200
Q R L R Q P V R Y V V V S H T A	
GCAGCGTCTGCAACACTCCGGCCTCGTGCCAGAGGCAGGCCCAAACGTG	250
G S V C N T P A S C Q R Q A Q N V	
CAGTACTACCACGTGCGGGAGCGGGGCTGGTGCACGTGGGCTACAATT	300
Q Y Y H V R E R G W C D V G Y N F	
CCTGATCGGAGAAGATGGGCTCGTGTATGAGGGCCGGGGCTGGAACACCT	350
L I G E D G L V Y E G R G W N T	
TAGGTGCTCACTCTGGGCCCACGTGGAACCCCATAGCCATCGGCATCTCC	400
L G A H S G P T W N P I A I G I S	
TTCATGGGCAACTACATGCATCGGGTGCCCCGGCCTCTGCTCTCAGGGC	450
F M G N Y M H R V P P A S A L R A	
GGCCCAGAGTCTGCTGGCTTGTGGCGCAGCTCGGGGATACCTGACTCCTA	500
A Q S L L A C G A A R G Y L T P	
ACTACGAAGTCAAAGGACACCGCGATGTGCAGCAGACGCTCTCTCCAGGG	550
N Y E V K G H R D V Q Q T L S P G	
GACGAGCTCTATAAAATCATCCAGCAGTGGCCGCACTACCGCCGCGTGTG	600
D E L <u>Y K I I Q Q W P H Y R R V</u>	
AGGGCCTGTCCGTCTTCTCACACCCACCCATCCCATCAGAAACCCACC	650
GCCTTCCCCTGCCCCAATAAAGGCGAAGCTTAACTGT	688

FIG. 4

4/5

ATACACAGCCCTGCGTCCTGTGCGGCACGTCCAGCATGTTGTTTGCCTGT 50
M L F A C

GCTCTCCTTGCCCTCCTGGGTCTGGCAACCTCCTGCAGTTTCATCGTGCC 100
A L L A L L G L A T S C S F I V P

CCGCAGTGAGTGGAGGGCCCTGCCATCCGAGTGCTCTAGCCGCCTGGGGC 150
R S E W R A L P S E C S S R L G

ACCCAGTTCGCTACGTGGTGATCTCACACACAGCCGGCAGCTTCTGCAAC 200
H P V R Y V V I S H T A G S F C N

AGCCCGGACTCCTGTGAACAGCAGGCCCGCAATGTGCAGCATTACCACAA 250
S P D S C E Q Q A R N V Q H Y H K

GAATGAGCTGGGCTGGTGCGATGTAGCCTACAACCTCCTTATTGGAGAGG 300
N E L G W C D V A Y N F L I G E

ACGGTCATGTCTATGAAGGCCGAGGCTGGAACATCAAGGGTGACCACACA 350
D G H V Y E G R G W N I K G D H T

GGGCCCATCTGGAATCCCATGTCTATTGGCATCACCTTCATGGGGAACCTT 400
G P I W N P M S I G I T F M G N F

CATGGACCGGGTACGCAAAGCGGCCCTCCGTGCTGCCCTAAATCTTCTG 450
M D R V R K A A L R A A L N L L

GAATCTGGGGTGTCTCGGGGCTTCCTGAGATCCAACCTATGAAGTCAAAGG 500
E S G V S R G F L R S N Y E V K G

ACACCGGGATGTGCAAAGCACTCTCTCTCCAGGTGACCAACTCTATCAGG 550
H R D V Q S T L S P G D Q L Y Q

TCATCCAAAGCTGCGAACACTACCGAGAGTGAGAGACCTTGAGACCTAGT 600
V I Q S W E H Y R E

GAGAATCCCCCCCCCAGCCCGAAATCCCTCCTGCCACCTGCTTCTTCC 650

CATTGACCCCCAATAAAGACTCAGCACC 678

FIG. 5

FIG. 7-1

5/5

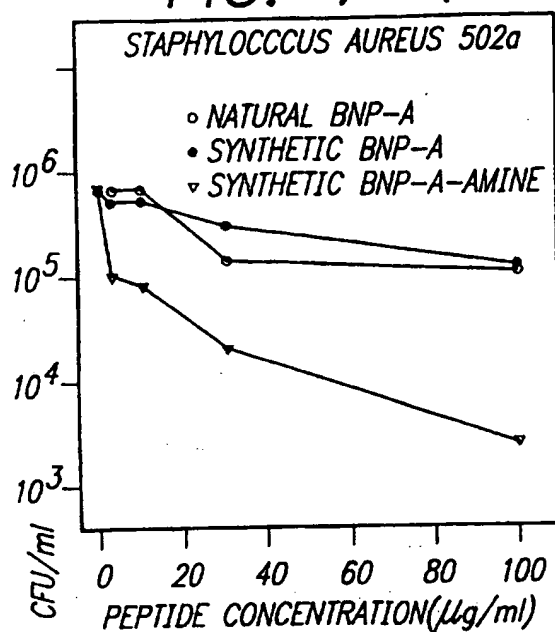


FIG. 7-2

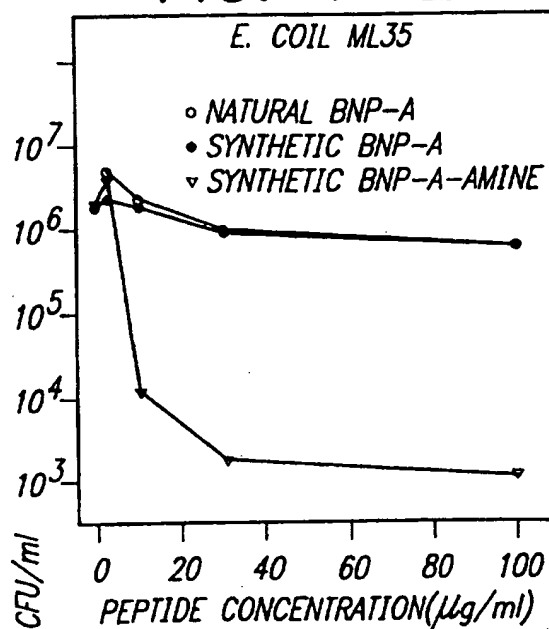


FIG. 7-3

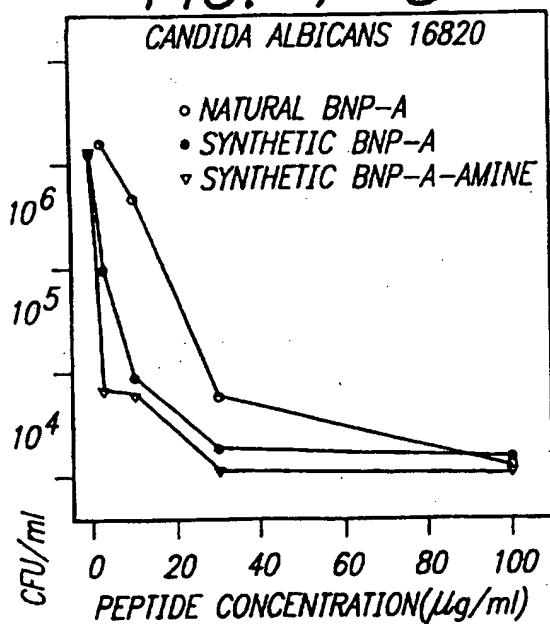
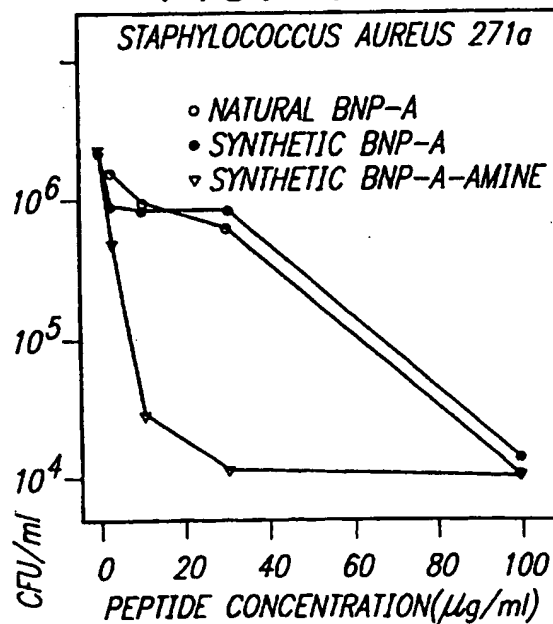


FIG. 7-4



INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US97/02218

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : A61K 38/00, 38/04, 39/12; C07K 5/00, 7/00, 16/00, 17/00

US CL : 424/185.1; 514/14, 15; 530/327, 388.24, 389.2; 536/23.5

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/185.1; 514/14, 15; 530/327, 388.24, 389.2; 536/23.5

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

APS, MEDLINE, EMBASE, LIFESCI, REGISTRY, BIOSIS, WPID

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US 5,459,235 A (SELSTED ET AL.) 17 October 1995, see entire document.	1-44
Y	DIAMOND et al. Airway epithelial cells are the site of expression of a mammalian antimicrobial peptide gene. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA. May 1993, Vol. 90, pages 4596-4600, see entire document.	1-44
Y	SELSTED et al. Defensins in granules of phagocytic and non-phagocytic cells. Trends in Cell Biology. March 1995, Vol. 5, pages 114-119, see entire document.	1-44

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C. ☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	* T	later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
* A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	* X*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
* E* earlier document published on or after the international filing date	* Y*	document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
* L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	* &*	document member of the same patent family
* O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means		
* P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed		

Date of the actual completion of the international search

07 APRIL 1997

Date of mailing of the international search report

15 APR 1997

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Box PCT
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

PATRICK NOLAN

Telephone No. (703) 308-0196

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US97/02218

C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	ZANETTI et al. The cDNA of the Neutrophil Antibiotic Bac5 Predicts a Pro-sequence Homologous to a Cysteine Proteinase Inhibitor That Is Common to Other Neutrophil Antibiotics. J. of Biol. Chem. 05 January 1993, Vol. 268, No. 1, pages 522-526, see entire document.	1-44

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☐ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☐ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER:** _____

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.